



# **Siebel Marketing User Guide**

Version 7.7  
June 2004

Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404  
Copyright © 2004 Siebel Systems, Inc.  
All rights reserved.  
Printed in the United States of America

No part of this publication may be stored in a retrieval system, transmitted, or reproduced in any way, including but not limited to photocopy, photographic, magnetic, or other record, without the prior agreement and written permission of Siebel Systems, Inc.

Siebel, the Siebel logo, TrickleSync, Universal Agent, and other Siebel names referenced herein are trademarks of Siebel Systems, Inc., and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Other product names, designations, logos, and symbols may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT MODULES AND OPTIONS.** This guide contains descriptions of modules that are optional and for which you may not have purchased a license. Siebel's Sample Database also includes data related to these optional modules. As a result, your software implementation may differ from descriptions in this guide. To find out more about the modules your organization has purchased, see your corporate purchasing agent or your Siebel sales representative.

**U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation, delivered subject to the Department of Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement, are "commercial computer software" as set forth in DFARS 227.7202, Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation, and as such, any use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation shall be subject to the restrictions contained in the applicable Siebel license agreement. All other use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be subject to the applicable Siebel license agreement and the restrictions contained in subsection (c) of FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June 1987), or FAR 52.227-14, Rights in Data—General, including Alternate III (June 1987), as applicable. Contractor/licensor is Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404.

#### **Proprietary Information**

Siebel Systems, Inc. considers information included in this documentation and in Siebel eBusiness Applications Online Help to be Confidential Information. Your access to and use of this Confidential Information are subject to the terms and conditions of: (1) the applicable Siebel Systems software license agreement, which has been executed and with which you agree to comply; and (2) the proprietary and restricted rights notices included in this documentation.

# Contents

## Chapter 1: What's New in This Release

## Chapter 2: Planning and Budgeting for Marketing

Creating a Marketing Plan	9
Setting Goals for the Marketing Plan	10
Creating Plan Tactics and Associating Plan Tactics with Marketing Plans	12
Developing and Tracking Budgets for a Marketing Plan	13
Associating Fund Requests with a Marketing Plan	15
Attaching Documents to a Marketing Plan	16
Tracking Marketing Expenses and Associating Invoices with Expenses	16
Using the Marketing Plan Explorer	19
Creating and Submitting Budget Requests	19

## Chapter 3: Designing Marketing Programs

About Multistage Programs	24
About the Program Execution Workflow	25
Creating a Program	25
Using the Program Flow	27
Adding a Stage to the Program	27
Using Repeating Stages Within a Program	28
Assigning Segments to a Stage	28
Adding a Campaign to a Stage	29
Setting Up Waves for a Campaign Load	30
Adding Imported or Internal Lists to a Campaign	31
Adding a Segment Tree to a Stage	32
Allocating Segment Tree Cells for a Stage	32
Creating and Applying Program Templates	33
Executing Programs	34

## Chapter 4: Marketing Segments and Segment Trees

About Segment Designer	35
Creating Segments in Segment Designer	38
Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments	39

Saving Result Sets for Marketing Segments	42
Segment Advanced Options	43
About Segment Tree Designer	43
Creating and Editing Segment Trees	44
Splitting Segments or Branches	46
Constraining List Data for a Segment Tree	48
Adding or Removing Constraints to the Eligible Audience	49
Segment Tree Advanced Options	49

## Chapter 5: Creating and Using Offers

Creating and Modifying Offers - Basic Steps	52
Creating an Offer	52
Modifying an Offer	54
Applying Globalization Rules to Offers	54
Associating Products with Offers	55
Creating and Editing Offer Templates	55
Creating an Offer Template and Adding it to the Template List	56
Using Hyperlinks (HREF) in an Offer Template	57
Editing a Template That Is Not Associated with an Offer	58
Editing a Template That Is Associated with an Offer	59
About Personalization Categories	62
Working with Email Offers	65
About Email Offers	65
Associating a Template with an Email Offer	66
Adding Attachments to Email Offers	67
About Merge Fields in Email Offers	67
About Email Offer Response Forms	67
Adding Response Forms to Email Offers	68
About Creating Conditional Content	69
If-Then-Else Personalization Element	70
Named Blocks Personalization Element	71
Associating Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and URLs with Offers	72
Creating a Wireless Offer	74
Working with Fax Offers	74
About Fax Offers	74
Associating a Template with a Fax Offer	75
Using Delivery Profiles for Fax Offers	75
Creating a Delivery Profile for Fax Offers	76
Associating a Delivery Profile with Fax Offers	77

Working with Phone Offers	77
About Phone Offers	77
Creating Call Guides for Phone Offers	78
About Direct Mail Offers	78
About Media Offers	79
Associating Literature with Offers	79
Working with Web Offers	80
About Web Offers	80
Associating a Template with a Web Offer	81
Adding Attachments to Web Offers Downloads List	81
Previewing Offers	83

## **Chapter 6: Planning and Designing Marketing Campaigns**

About Siebel Marketing Campaigns	85
Program and Campaign Planning Tools	86
Creating and Using Activity Plans	87
Using Timelines	89
Associating Documents with Programs and Campaigns	90
Creating Campaigns	91
Requirements for Creating and Modifying Campaigns	91
Creating a Campaign	92
Associating Campaign Elements with a Campaign	95
Associating Offers with a Campaign	96
Associating Related Events with a Campaign	96
Using SmartScripts with a Campaign	97
Creating and Applying Campaign Templates	97
Working with Campaign Teams and Groups	98
Assigning a Team to a Campaign	98
Setting Up Campaign Groups	99
Associating Groups with Campaigns	100
Setting Up Campaign Execution Options	100
Setting Up Execution Options for a Campaign	101
Using Assignment Manager with Campaign Contacts	106
Setting Up Campaign Quotas	107
Creating Campaign Quota Plans	107
Defining Quotas for the Plan	108
Assigning Awards to the Campaign Quota Objective	109
Assigning Campaign Quota Plan Participants	111

Setting Up Campaign Assignment Skills	111
Associating Assignment Skills with a Campaign	112
Defining Campaign Skill Items	112
Deleting Assignment Skills and Campaign Skill Items	113
Using Siebel Marketing with Siebel Events Management	114
About Testing Campaign Offers	115
Testing Campaigns Business Scenario	115
Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers	116
Using Response Management	116
Adding Response Information to Prospect or Contact Records	117
Using Automatic Source Code and Offer Code Lookups	118
Adding a Product to a Response	119
Adding an Order to a Response	119
Adding an Opportunity to a Response	120
Adding an Attachment to a Response	120
Response Type Definitions	121
Promoting a Response to an Opportunity	123
Creating Automatic Responses from Opportunities and Orders	123
Using Campaign Explorer	124
Loading Customers in Campaigns	125
Associating a List of Prospects or Contacts with a Campaign	125
Adding Contacts and Prospects to a Campaign Individually	126
Viewing Campaign Contacts and Prospects	127
Loading Campaigns	127
Reviewing Contacts and Prospects in Active Campaigns	128

## **Chapter 7: Launching Programs and Campaigns**

About Previewing and Generating Lists	129
Previewing a List	130
Manually Generating a Campaign List	130
About Launching Programs and Campaigns	131
Requirements for Launching Campaigns Manually	132
Launching Campaigns Manually	132
Launching Email and Fax Campaigns	133
Checking Campaign Launch Status	133
Suspending and Relaunching Email Campaigns	134
Using the Schedule Calendar View	135

Scheduling a Stage Execution	135
Scheduling the Execution of a Campaign	136
Understanding the Marketing Campaign Launch Workflow Process	137
Viewing Campaign Charts in Siebel Campaigns	138
Viewing a Campaign Achievement Chart	138
Viewing a Call Status Analysis Chart	139
Viewing a Call Status Analysis by Employee Chart	139
Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign Chart	140
Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Response Chart	140
Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis Chart	141
Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee Chart	141
Viewing an Order Revenue Analysis Chart	141
Viewing a Campaign Trend Analysis Chart	142
Viewing a Trend Analysis by Employee Chart	142
Viewing Response Charts in Siebel Campaigns	142
Campaign Analysis (Response)	143
Viewing an Opportunity Analysis (Response) Chart	143
Viewing an Offer Analysis (Response) Chart	144
Viewing an Offer Type Analysis (Response) Chart	144
Viewing an Offer Type Analysis (Response) by Campaign Chart	144
Viewing a Revenue Analysis (Response) Chart	145
Viewing an Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis (Response) Chart	145

## Chapter 8: List Management

Importing and Managing External Lists	147
Prerequisites for Importing External Lists	148
Importing External Lists	150
Launching Import Requests and Tracking the Import Status	154
Importing Campaign and Response Data	155
Maintaining Attributes for List Records	156
Mapping Fields	157
Using List Import Formats	157
Editing the List Import Format Settings	158
Understanding Import Status and Error Messages	159
Creating and Managing Internal Lists	159
Using Prospect Lists in Siebel Marketing	160
Creating Internal Lists	161
Adding to Internal Lists	162
Creating Lists of Prospects Using Additional Attributes	163
Creating and Managing Subscription Lists	164

Promoting Prospects	164
Promoting a Prospect to a Contact	165
Promoting a Prospect's Response to an Opportunity	167
Modifying the Promotion Map	167
Viewing and Maintaining Lists	168
Viewing Lists of Contacts or Prospects	169
Deactivating Lists	170
Deleting Lists	170
Removing Prospects from Lists	170
Removing Contacts from Lists	171
Integrating List Management with D&B	171
Viewing Account Data for a D&B Prospect	172
Promoting a D&B Prospect	172

## **Chapter 9: Setting Up and Using Web Marketing**

About Web Marketing Web Site Visitors	173
Setting Up Siebel Web Marketing	175
Installing Web Marketing	175
Controlling User Access to the Web Marketing Web Site	175
Setting Up Default Responsibilities and Users for Web Marketing	176
Setting Up a Default Campaign and Default Offer	177
Using Siebel Personalization with Web Marketing	177
Customizing the Web Marketing User Interface	177
About the Siebel Web Marketing Web Site	180
Using the Web Marketing Offers Page	180
Using Web Marketing Views and Additional Unstructured Content	182
Using the Web Marketing Information Page	183

## **Appendix A: Assigning Character Sets for the Email Marketing Server**

## **Index**

# 1

## What's New in This Release

### What's New in Siebel Marketing User Guide, Version 7.7

Siebel Marketing User Guide is a new book for the 7.7 version of Siebel Marketing.

Table 1 lists changes described in this version of the documentation to support release 7.7 of the software.

Table 1. New Product Features in Siebel Marketing User Guide, Version 7.7

Topic	Description
Enhanced budget requests See, " <a href="#">Developing and Tracking Budgets for a Marketing Plan</a> " on page 13.	Members of the marketing organization can use the Budget Request module to submit quarterly or annual budget items for funding and approval. Items can include important details such as business justification, funding amount needed, and specific tactics related to the item.
Enhanced expense tracking See, " <a href="#">Tracking Marketing Expenses and Associating Invoices with Expenses</a> " on page 16.	This enhanced feature allows the marketing team to keep accurate records of how much of the budget has been committed and spent in the following ways: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Each campaign, program, and event can provide a detailed expense budget to track the line item expenses for the project.</li><li>■ Each expense item can also be tied to the vendor invoice and invoice items.</li></ul>
Enhanced segmentation See, " <a href="#">Marketing Segments and Segment Trees</a> " on page 35.	The following are enhanced and new capabilities of Marketing segmentation: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Users can view the impact of adding and removing criteria as criteria are applied to a segment.</li><li>■ New reports with cascading-style counts show the interaction between individual elements of the segment criteria.</li><li>■ Mechanisms such as sampled counts and intelligent caching can improve the level of interactivity during the segmentation process.</li><li>■ A new segment tree designer allows direct marketers to split and sample segments into highly targeted cells.</li></ul>

Table 1. New Product Features in Siebel Marketing User Guide, Version 7.7

Topic	Description
<p>Enhanced program design</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"About Multistage Programs" on page 24.</a></p>	<p>The following new capabilities allow program managers to design multistage, recurring marketing programs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Program designers implementing multistep programs can create conditional branching between stages of the program.</li> <li>■ Each stage can have its own schedule and recurring execution.</li> <li>■ Any stage can be scheduled and repeated independently of other steps in the program.</li> <li>■ Any step in the program can be executed manually or automatically.</li> </ul>
<p>Program and campaign templates</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"Creating and Applying Program Templates" on page 33</a> and <a href="#">"Creating and Applying Campaign Templates" on page 97.</a></p>	<p>A new feature allows you to reuse any program, campaign, and event by saving them as templates.</p> <p>For example, an organization might create templates that contain required activities such as example offers, execution options, and activity plans. When creating new tactics, users would choose from the list of available templates.</p>
<p>Exact matching for list import</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"Importing External Lists" on page 150.</a></p>	<p>List Import now supports the ability to designate certain columns in the list import file to be used for exact matching. This supports detection of existing contacts and prospects without requiring the Data Quality Matching server.</p>
<p>Enhanced email marketing</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"Creating and Editing Offer Templates" on page 55</a> and <a href="#">"Working with Email Offers" on page 65.</a></p>	<p>Siebel Email Marketing 7.7 offers enhanced personalization merge fields for email campaigns. New features provide additional flexibility to add merge fields, including information from external data sources and other tables within the Siebel application.</p>
<p>Simplified hierarchy</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"Creating a Program" on page 25</a> and <a href="#">"Creating Campaigns" on page 91.</a></p>	<p>The new hierarchy consists of programs, stages, campaigns, and waves. (Before 7.7, program plans and campaign plans also were used.)</p>
<p>Wireless marketing</p> <p>See, <a href="#">"Creating a Wireless Offer" on page 74.</a></p>	<p>Support for delivery of wireless offers using short messaging system (SMS).</p>

# 2

## Planning and Budgeting for Marketing

Siebel Marketing provides support for planning and budgeting across the marketing organization. Using marketing plans, marketing executives and managers can create high-level business plans that cover a broad set of tactics, including outbound and inbound programs, campaigns, and events. For each plan, the marketing executive or team can set goals and objectives, identify available funds, assign budgets, associate multichannel marketing tactics, share documents, and generate forecasts.

The Marketing Planning module can be applied to fit any organizational planning approach, including plans based on time periods (such as quarterly or annual planning cycles), business units, product lines, or any other management structure. Plans can be organized in hierarchies with any number of levels to support small marketing organizations as well as more complex planning processes.

Executives can also set high-level corporate objectives and then assign goals to each business unit that is participating in the plan. Each business unit can then create its marketing plan to meet its own assigned goals, forecast the organization's ability to achieve the assigned goals, and submit the plan for approval. Based on common goals and performance metrics, marketing organizations can develop their own set of key performance metrics and institute the use of those metrics across all marketing plans.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Creating a Marketing Plan on page 9](#)
- [Creating and Submitting Budget Requests on page 19](#)

### Creating a Marketing Plan

You create a marketing plan in the Marketing Plans screen. The Marketing Plans list provides a list of all the marketing plans to which you have access.

The visibility filter provides several levels of visibility, including the following views:

- My Marketing Plans displays marketing plans with which you are associated as a team member.
- All Marketing Plans displays marketing plans in your assigned organizations.
- All Marketing Plans across My Organizations displays marketing plans that exist in your organizations and in any suborganizations in your organizations.
- All Marketing Plans across Organizations displays the marketing plans that exist in all organizations in the your Siebel application.

#### ***To create a marketing plan***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, create a new record.

3 Complete the fields, using [Table 2 on page 10](#) as a guide.

**NOTE:** The Forecast Revenue, Forecast Expenses, Actual Revenue, Actual Expenses and Total Funds fields contain read-only values that are determined by calculations from other views. For more information about these fields, see [“To associate a fund request with a marketing plan” on page 15](#).

Table 2. Marketing Plans Fields

Field	Description
Assigned Budget	(Optional) The amount of money approved for use on the marketing plan.
Planning Period	(Optional) You associate the planning period with the plan so that you can use it during categorization and reporting. For example, you might need to track a quarterly or annual planning period.
Plan Code	(Required) An identification code determined by the user. Must be a unique value.
Comments	(Optional) A text field for any special comments for the plan.
Execution Period	(Optional) The period in which the plan will actually be executed.
Approval Status	(Optional) A status field that indicates that the plan has been submitted, approved, or declined.
Name	(Required) The name of the marketing plan.
Objective	(Optional) A text description of the objective of the marketing plan.
Organization	(Optional) A multivalue field displaying all organizations associated with the plan. All organizations that appear in this list have visibility to the plan.
Product Lines	(Optional) A dialog box containing product lines associated with this plan. Might include one or more product lines.
Products	(Optional) A dialog box containing products associated with this plan. Might include one or more products.
Region	(Optional) A listing of regions that you can associate with this plan. Regions are organized using a region hierarchy.
Team	(Optional) A multivalue field containing members of the team for the plan.
Type	(Optional) A list of the category types of marketing plans. Examples of possible values include Corporate, Regional, Business Unit, and Department.

## Setting Goals for the Marketing Plan

Each marketing plan can be associated with a set of goals. Each goal is a metric against which the performance of the plan will be measured.

**To create a goal for a marketing plan**

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, drill down on the plan name.
- 3 Click the Goals view tab.
- 4 In the Marketing Plans form, from the Type drop-down list, select the appropriate type of plan.
- 5 In the Goals list, click Apply Goal Template.

The goals from the template automatically populate the Goals list. If a template is not available, a message appears.

- 6 If a goal template is not available, in the Goals list, create a new record.
- 7 In the new record, complete the fields using [Table 3](#) as a guide.

**NOTE:** Make sure that you select the appropriate number format for the goal type.

Table 3. Fields for Marketing Plan Goals

Field	Description
Average Contribution Margin	The average revenue margin on each order after deducting the cost of goods sold.
Conversion Rate %	The percentage of responses that convert to orders.
Forecast Amount or Forecast Quantity	If you know the expected forecast value, type it in the Forecast Amount or Forecast Quantity field. If you do not know the expected forecast value, leave the Forecast Amount or Forecast Quantity field empty, and add the value after you develop a forecast.

Table 3. Fields for Marketing Plan Goals

Field	Description
Metric	<p>Type of goal. The following are some of the values for this field:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Average Cost per Lead. (Number Format=Currency) The expected cost of all marketing activities in the plan divided by the number of sales leads generated.</li> <li>■ Average Cost per Opportunity. (Number Format=Currency) The expected cost of all marketing activities in the plan divided by the number of sales opportunities generated.</li> <li>■ Average Cost per Order. (Number Format=Currency) The expected cost of all marketing activities in the plan divided by the number of sales orders generated.</li> <li>■ # Leads. (Number Format=Integer) The number of sales leads this plan is expected to yield. The definition of lead may vary based on your company's business process.</li> <li>■ ROI %. (Number Format=Percentage) The Return on Investment percentage that this plan is expected to earn.</li> <li>■ Unit Volume. (Number Format=Integer) The number of product units that are expected to be sold as a result of this plan.</li> </ul>
Number Format	<p>The types of formats are Number (nonfinancial), Percentage (nonfinancial), and Currency (financial).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ If you select the Currency number format (a financial goal), complete the Target Amount field.</li> <li>■ If you select a different number format (a nonfinancial goal), in the Target Qty field, type the target number for the goal.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If the goal has a Number Format of Percentage be sure to type whole number values, not decimal values. For example, an ROI goal of 15% should be typed as "15", not ".15".</p>

## Creating Plan Tactics and Associating Plan Tactics with Marketing Plans

A plan tactic is a marketing program, event plan, or stand-alone campaign that you have associated with a marketing plan. A marketing plan can be associated with any number of marketing programs, event plans, or stand-alone campaigns.

- A marketing program is any program created in the Programs screen.
- An event plan can be any event plan created in the Events screen.
- A stand-alone campaign can be any campaign created in the Campaigns screen that is not associated with a marketing program.

You can create new tactics while developing your marketing plan or associate existing tactics with the marketing plan.

***To create a new plan tactic and associate it with a marketing plan***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, query for the appropriate marketing plan.
- 3 Drill down on the marketing plan name.
- 4 Click the Plan Tactics view tab.
- 5 In the Plan Tactics list, create a new tactic.
- 6 (Required) In the new record, complete the Tactic Name and Type fields.

**CAUTION:** Be sure to select the correct Tactic Type (Program, Standalone Campaign, or Event Plan) before saving the record, because the type cannot be changed after the record is saved.

***To associate an existing plan tactic with a marketing plan***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, query for the appropriate marketing plan.
- 3 Click the Plan Tactics view tab.
- 4 Drill down on the marketing plan name.
- 5 In the Plan Tactics list, click Add to associate an existing tactic to a marketing plan.

You can modify all the fields in this record except Type.

- 6 In the Pick Tactic dialog box, query for the program, event, or stand-alone campaign that you want to associate with the plan, and click OK.

**NOTE:** Each tactic can only be associated with one marketing plan.

## Developing and Tracking Budgets for a Marketing Plan

You can use marketing plans to develop budgets. As you implement tactics, you can track the financial status of the marketing plan. A marketing plan contains financial details that provide visibility across your company's marketing spending. The following list includes some of the financial details you might want to use:

- Authors of the plan can add the expected cost of the plan and owners of the budget can allocate money to the plan.
- An associated group of budget requests allows tactic owners to send requests for funding through an approval process.
- A list of tactics, including their requested and allocated budgets, can be associated with the plan.
- Financial summary fields can calculate the forecast and actual revenue and expenses for all the tactics in the plan.

Use the marketing plan to review and approve budgets, to forecast expenses and revenues, and to record actual expenses and revenues for all the programs, campaigns, and events in your organization. The marketing plan provides the following categories of values for managing marketing budgets:

- **Requested and Assigned Budget.** The Plan Tactics view tab contains two fields that show how much money the plan owner has requested (Requested Budget) and how much money has been approved by the budget owner (Assigned Budget). These fields can be edited.
- **Forecast and Actual Expenses.** The total forecast and actual expenses across all tactics in the marketing plan.
  - Forecast Expenses. Total forecast expense value for all expense records associated with the tactics (programs, campaigns, and events) in the marketing plan.
  - Actual Expenses. Total actual expense value for all expense records associated with the tactics in the marketing plan.

Table 4 identifies the location of expense data for each type of tactic.

Table 4. Expense Source Fields (Forecast and Actual)

Tactic Type	Where to find the input data
Programs	Programs screen > Plan > Expenses Campaigns screen > Plan > Expenses (for campaigns associated to programs)
Standalone Campaigns	Campaigns screen > Plan > Expenses
Event Plans	Events screen > Event Plans > Plan > Expenses
Events	Events screen > Plan > Expenses

- **Forecast and Actual Revenue.** The total actual expenses and revenues across all tactics in the marketing plan. The Plan Details view tab includes a Financial Summary section summarizing total revenues for all the tactics in the plan.

Table 5 identifies the location of revenue data for each type of tactic.

Table 5. Revenue Goals Source Fields (Forecast and Actual)

Tactic Type	Where to find the input data
Programs	Programs screen > Plan view tab > Goals link
Campaigns	Campaigns screen > Plan view tab > Goals link
Event Plans	Events screen > Event Plans link > Plans view tab > Revenue link

- Forecast Revenue. A total of forecast values for revenue goals such as forecast amount for all tactics in the marketing plan.

- Actual Revenue. The Total Order Revenue for all orders associated with a tactic using values obtained from the Siebel Analytics Server after the Siebel Data Warehouse is populated from the Siebel transactional database. If the value from the Analytics Server is not integrated into your environment, the value is blank.

### **To assign requested and assigned budgets to marketing plan tactics**

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, query for the appropriate marketing plan.
- 3 Click the Plan Tactics view tab and verify that you have associated your targeted programs, events, and stand-alone campaigns.

For information on associating plan tactics, see [“Creating Plan Tactics and Associating Plan Tactics with Marketing Plans” on page 12.](#)

- 4 From the Plan Tactics Menu, select Columns Displayed.

Review the Available Columns list. Depending on your business needs, you might need to add columns to the list. For example, if you developed forecast values, you might want to add columns that contain forecast amounts.

- 5 In the Columns Displayed dialog box, move Requested Budget and Assigned Budget to the Selected Columns list and click Save.
- 6 In the appropriate column, type the requested or assigned amount.

If you developed forecast expenses for the tactic, you can verify the plan is within budget by comparing your assigned budget to the forecast expenses.

## **Associating Fund Requests with a Marketing Plan**

If your company uses the Market Development Funds module (MDF), any fund request can be associated with a plan tactic. For information about creating fund requests, see the section about fund requests in *Siebel Partner Relationship Management Administration Guide*.

To associate a fund request with a marketing tactic, each fund request needs a link to the Marketing Purpose field in the request. After you associate fund requests with a tactic, the total value of all associated fund requests appears in the Total Funds field in the Marketing Plan form.

### **To associate a fund request with a marketing plan**

- 1 Navigate to the Fund Requests screen.
- 2 In the Fund Requests list, select the fund request, and then click the Marketing Purpose select button.

To see the Marketing Purpose field, you might need to click the menu button, choose Columns Displayed, and add the column.

- 3 In the Pick Source dialog box, select the marketing tactic (program, campaign or event).

## Attaching Documents to a Marketing Plan

You can attach planning documents to a marketing plan using the Documents view. These documents are visible to anyone who has access to the plan.

### ***To attach a document to a marketing plan***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, drill down on the Marketing Plan name.
- 3 Click the Documents view tab and create a new record.
- 4 Click the Attachment Name select button, locate the document on your local machine or network, and click Open.

## Tracking Marketing Expenses and Associating Invoices with Expenses

Siebel Marketing allows you to track the detailed expenses for your marketing tactics and associate invoices and invoice items with expenses. This section contains the following topics:

- [Adding Expenses for Programs, Campaigns and Events on page 16](#)
- [Associating Invoices and Invoice Items with Expenses on page 18](#)

### **Adding Expenses for Programs, Campaigns and Events**

Using the Expense views for programs, campaigns, event plans and events, you can add the type and amount for each budget expense along with information such as the purchase order number and invoice details. After you add expenses, the total forecast and actual values are calculated and displayed in the parent marketing plan for the tactic.

### ***To add expenses for a campaign***

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Plan view tab
- 4 In the Plan link bar, click Expenses.

- 5 Click New and complete the fields. [Table 6 on page 17](#) contains descriptions of some fields you might use.

Table 6. Expense Fields for Campaigns, Programs, and Events

Field	Description
Actual # Units and Actual Unit Cost	Typically, the Actual amount indicates the cost of the expense after the actual quote or invoice is received.  The Actual Expense column is automatically calculated by multiplying Actual # Units by Actual Unit Cost. If you selected Fixed as the type for the Expense, the # Units will default to 1. If you selected Per Unit as the type, you will need to enter the Basis # Units for the expense.
Event	(Optional for event expenses). Associates the expense with a specific event.
Expense	A reference name for the expense.
Expense Date	Determines the correct exchange rate, if your application spans multiple currencies.
Forecast # Units and Forecast Unit Cost	Typically, the Forecast amount indicates the expected cost of the expense before the actual quote or invoice is received for the expense.  The Forecast Expense column is automatically calculated by multiplying Forecast # Units by Forecast Unit Cost. If you select Fixed as the type for the Expense, the # Units defaults to 1. If you select Per Unit as the type, you need to enter the Basis # Units for the expense.
Invoice Id	The number under which this expense was billed your company. The Invoice will only be available if your company stores invoice information in the Siebel application.
Purpose (or Cost Type)	The category for the expense.
Session	(Optional for event expenses). Associates the expense with a specific session.
Unit	Indicates if the expense is a fixed or per unit (variable) cost.

**To add program expenses**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 Click the Plan view tab.
- 4 In the Plan link bar, click Expenses.
- 5 Click New, and complete the fields.

[Table 6](#) contains descriptions of some fields you might use.

- 6 If appropriate, associate the expense to a specific campaign by selecting the campaign in the Campaign Name field.

### ***To add event expenses***

- 1 Navigate to the Events screen.
- 2 In the Events list, drill down on the event name.
- 3 Click the Plan view tab.
- 4 In the Plan link bar, click Expenses.
- 5 Click New, and complete the fields.

[Table 6 on page 17](#) contains descriptions of some fields you might use.

### ***To add event plan expenses***

- 1 Navigate to the Events screen > Event Plan view.
- 2 In the Event Plan list, drill down on the event name.
- 3 Click the Plan view tab.
- 4 In the Plan link bar, click Expenses.
- 5 Click New, and complete the fields.

[Table 6 on page 17](#) contains descriptions of some fields you might use.

## **Associating Invoices and Invoice Items with Expenses**

Invoice values are available only if your company stores invoice information in the Siebel application.

### ***To associate invoices and invoice items with expenses***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns, Programs, or Events screen.
- 2 Drill down on the campaign, program, or event name.
- 3 Click the Plan view tab.
- 4 In the Plan link bar, click Expenses.
- 5 In the Expenses list, locate the expense record with which you want to associate the invoice and Invoice item.
- 6 Click the Invoice Id # select button, query for the invoice number, and click OK.  
**NOTE:** Only Invoices with a type of Payable appear.
- 7 Scroll down to the Invoice Line Items list, and click Add.
- 8 In the Pick Line Items dialog box, select one or more line items to associate with the expense.

- 9 Click Update Actual Cost to update the Actual Expense field on the expense record.

**NOTE:** You can associate different line items from the same invoice to different expense records.

## Using the Marketing Plan Explorer

You can use the Plan Explorer to review the organization of your marketing plans and its associated plan tactics.

### *To use the Plan Explorer*

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen > Plan Explorer view.
- 2 Expand the Marketing Plans folder.
- 3 To see plan tactics associated with a marketing plan, expand a plan tactics folder in the parent plan folder.

## Creating and Submitting Budget Requests

Budget Requests allow you to create a request for money to pay for a marketing activity such as a campaign, program, or event. You can specify the amount of funding you need, associate the tactics related to the request, and submit the request for approval from the budget owner in your organization.

Budget requests can be associated with a marketing plan or created and approved without establishing a relationship to a marketing plan.

### *To create a budget request*

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen.
- 2 In the Marketing Plans link bar, select Budget Requests.
- 3 In the Budget Requests list, click New and complete the fields using [Table 7 on page 20](#) as a guide.

- 4 To associate programs, campaigns, or event plans with a budget request, select the Plan Tactics view tab and click Add.

Table 7. Budget Request Fields

Field	Action
Budget Category (G/L Account)	Select the budget category for the request. The categories typically correspond to the values in the back-office accounting system general ledger.
Type	The value corresponds to the categories that your organization uses to organize and review requests.
MDF Requested	This value is automatically calculated by totaling all the MDF Requests associated with any tactics in the budget request.
Net Requested	This value is automatically calculated by subtracting the MDF Requested from the Total Requested.
Line Number	You can use this field in any way that meets your business needs. For example, some general ledger systems generate a line number for each budget item. You can use this field to track the line number from your general ledger system.
Approval Status	Indicates the current approval status of the request. Choose a value from this field to submit, approve, decline, or request a revision of the request.
Approved Budget	Specify the amount of money approved for the request. This field should be used only by employees with budget authority.
Marketing Plan	Associates the request with the marketing plan.
Planning Period	Indicates the time period during which the request will be credited. For example, an annual or quarterly budgeting period.
Region	Select the region that will spend the funds.
Organization	Associates the request with organizations that should have visibility to the request.
Pre-Approved	Indicates if approval has already been provided. When you check the preapproval flag, the value in the Approval Status field is prefilled with Approved.
Delivery Date	The date that the funds need to be available.
Team	Select the employee positions that should have visibility to the request.
Brand	The Brand (category) related to the tactics for the request.
Product Lines	The product lines related to the request.
Products	The products related to the request.
Target Industry	The target industry for the tactics in the request.

Table 7. Budget Request Fields

Field	Action
Market Development Funds	Select an MDF Fund to indicate the source of any MDF Requests that will be associated with tactics for the request. This relationship does not limit any associations between MDF Request and the tactics.
Actual Total Expense	The automatically calculated total of all expenses from the tactics associated with the budget request.
Actual MDF Received	The automatically calculated total of all MDF Requests associated with the budget request tactics.

***To associate a budget request with a marketing plan***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Plans screen
- 2 In the Marketing Plans list, drill down on the Marketing Plan name.
- 3 Click the Budget Requests view tab.
- 4 In the Budget Requests list, click Add.
- 5 In the Pick Budget Request dialog box, select the budget request, and click OK.

**NOTE:** If there are any tactics associated with the budget request that are not already associated with a marketing plan, the tactics will automatically be associated with the marketing plan.

***To submit a budget request***

- 1 Create a budget request.  
Make sure to complete the Total Requested field.
- 2 To associate a tactic with the request, performing the following steps:
  - a Scroll down to the Plan Tactics list.
  - b In the Plan Tactics list, click Add and select the plan tactic.
- 3 From the Approval Status drop-down list, choose Submitted.



# 3

## Designing Marketing Programs

A *program* is a multistep dialogue in which you can set up a series of communications to your customers and prospects. In the Programs screen, you can use the graphical drag-and-drop Program Flow view or the Program Explorer view to design and execute multistage, triggered, and recurring marketing programs using new or existing segments, lists, and campaigns.

You can establish multiple stages for a marketing program. Each stage can have multiple segments, segment trees, lists, and campaigns. Subsequent stages can be based on a customer response or any other event. For example, a visit by a sales person to a premium customer might trigger a follow-up email to that customer for the selected product.

In the workspace, you can use the right-click menu to manually start Marketing Server tasks. To schedule server tasks to be started automatically, use the Schedule calendar.

The graphical Program Flow designer is integrated with Siebel's workflow engine and Marketing Server. Therefore, once defined, the entire program can be automated from the initial customer segmentation through communication, to response collection and analysis. This capability is especially useful when programs are set to automatically recur, such as a monthly welcome package campaign to new customers.

Each time you design and implement a marketing program, you perform a number of tasks in the sequence shown in the following list:

- 1 Creating a program.** Define the details of the program, such as purpose, team, the start and end date, and so on. For details, see ["Creating a Program" on page 25](#).
- 2 Adding a stage to the program.** Using the Program Flow view, add a stage milestone to the program and complete the stage details. For details, see ["Using the Program Flow" on page 27](#), and ["Adding a Stage to the Program" on page 27](#).
- 3 Assigning segments to a stage.** Using the Program Flow view, select predefined segments that define the target customer you are trying to reach, and associate the segments to the stage. For details, see ["Assigning Segments to a Stage" on page 28](#).
- 4 Adding a campaign to a stage.** Using the Program Flow view, select one or more predefined campaigns with associated offers and link these campaigns to the program stage. For details, read ["Adding a Campaign to a Stage" on page 29](#).
- 5 Defining waved distribution and vendor lists.** To pace your distribution and avoid overloading your vendors and fulfillment center, you can set up waves. For details, see ["Setting Up Waves for a Campaign Load" on page 30](#).
- 6 Adding lists to the campaign.** If you have imported lists of prospects or contacts, you can optionally add these lists to the campaign. For details, see ["Adding Imported or Internal Lists to a Campaign" on page 31](#).
- 7 Allocating segment tree cells to campaigns.** For details, see ["Allocating Segment Tree Cells for a Stage" on page 32](#).

- 8 Using program templates.** For details, see [“Creating and Applying Program Templates” on page 33.](#)
- 9 Executing Programs.** For details, see [“Executing Programs” on page 34.](#)
- 10 Previewing the list.** You can preview the names in your distribution list to make sure the list is formatted correctly and contains the contact information you need. For details, see [“Previewing a List” on page 130.](#)
- 11 Loading the campaign.** When you are ready to save your target customers in the Siebel database, you can perform the Load Campaign task from the Program Flow or Program Explorer views, or schedule the task using the Schedule view. Loading the campaign saves contacts in the Siebel transaction database. For details, see [“Loading Customers in Campaigns” on page 125.](#)
- 12 Launching the campaign.** After loading the campaign and generating the lists, you can launch the campaign from the Program Flow or Program Explorer views or schedule each stage, which automatically launches the campaigns. The Launch Campaign task distributes lists to vendors using FTP or email, and sends email, wireless and fax offers to contacts. For details, see [Chapter 7, “Launching Programs and Campaigns.”](#)

## About Multistage Programs

Siebel Marketing supports both single-stage and multistage marketing programs. In a single-stage program, contacts are targeted in a stand-alone campaign, with no follow-up campaigns planned. During a multistage program, contacts in the first stage receive follow-up treatment in the program’s second and third stages, often based on the contact’s response to the original campaign. Multistage programs use stages to mark each phase of the program, campaigns to track separate instances of marketing messages, and campaign waves to track each batch of customers that are contacted. The following are types of multistage programs:

- **Marketing Program with Recurring Campaign.** Scheduled to recur at standard intervals or specific times (daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly). For example, your company sends out a welcome kit and free gift to new customers on a monthly basis. Each month, a program stage occurs, new customers are identified (based on the segment criteria of account longevity of less than a month), and the welcome campaign is launched.
- **Event-triggered marketing program.** Provides an automatic follow-up activity based on an action. For example, a customer visiting a product catalog might trigger an email offer to that customer based on items included in the prospect’s cart. If no response to the email is received, a telesales campaign is automatically launched to offer the customer a special offer on the product.
- **Response triggered marketing program.** Uses response data to drive the next stage of the marketing program.

For example, the marketing manager of a bank designs a program implementing the company’s goal of increasing the number of bank-affiliated credit card customers. Within the program, he creates two campaigns, one offering a card with 10% interest and a \$25 annual fee, the other offering 14% interest but no annual fee. These offers are sent to 250,000 of the company’s customers who do not already have credit card accounts with the bank.

After 30 days, response information is used to:

- Send a welcome packet of information to each new credit card customer.
- Offer an 8%, \$25 annual fee card to everyone who did not respond.

When using repeating stages, be sure that your segment criteria excludes customers who were targeted in any previous wave of the same campaign or same stage. This prevents the customers from receiving redundant messages.

## About the Program Execution Workflow

Multistage programs can be launched manually or automatically scheduled using the calendar. When you use the calendar, it can trigger key events such as loading a campaign (list generation) and launching a campaign (sending lists to vendors and sending offers to targeted contacts). The Program Schedule drives the process, with activities triggering the execution of each program. Each of these key events can be executed manually, using the Program Flow menu or the Program Explorer menus.

The Stage Execution workflow process shows how executing a program, loading a campaign, and launching a campaign occur in a multistage process.

When the stage is activated, Siebel Marketing applies a predefined allocation of segment counts to campaigns. Campaigns are loaded and launched, and the next stage is scheduled. This process continues until the last stage occurs, and the program is completed. Each stage of a program is a unique event, and Siebel Marketing tracks campaign and response history at the unique campaign wave level (for each run). For more information about workflow processes and the Siebel Business Process Designer, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

## Creating a Program

When you create a new program, you specify an objective, a type (for example, Cross-sell or Win-back), a status (Planned, Active or Completed), a revenue goal, and a budget figure.

When you add organizations to a program, any campaign that you add to a program (using the program flow or program explorer) inherits the program's organizations. The campaign that you add retains any existing organizations and existing lead partner.

The organizations on the campaign represent the union of the program's and campaign's organizations. After you add the campaign to the program, changes made to the organizations at the program will not be automatically reflected at the associated campaign level. Segments added to the program will not inherit the organizations. For additional information, see ["Creating a Campaign" on page 92](#).

**NOTE:** You can turn off the teams and organizations inheritance features in Siebel Tools. In the appropriate business component, change the User Prop value for the Copy Teams and Copy Organizations property from Y to N. For more information, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

You can attach documents and other files and view program stages and status. In addition, you can add team members, activity plans, events, and design the actual program flow, using a graphical designer workspace.

**To create a program**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, create a new record.
- 3 Complete the fields using [Table 8 on page 26](#) as a guide.
- 4 Drill down on a program to view additional fields.
- 5 Save the program.

To see available fields, in the Programs form, click the Show more button.

Table 8. Frequently Used Fields in the Programs List

Field	Comment
Assigned Budget	Click the Budget select button to select the program’s currency code, exchange date, and budget amount. The budget value is a top-down figure, rather than a calculated bottom-up figure such as the Expected Cost field.
Forecast Expense	This read-only field displays the sum of the expense data added in the Forecast view for campaigns associated with the program.
Forecast Revenue	This read-only field displays the sum of the revenue predictions (based on data added in the Goals view) for campaigns associated with the program.
Lead Partner	Choose a partner organization to associate with the program. The Lead Partner is limited to the organizations associated to the program.
Organization	Click the Organization select button and select the predefined organization that will be responsible for the program. An organization that you assign to a program will be inherited by campaigns in that program.
Region	Choose the region to which the program is related.
Planned Start/ Planned End	(Required) Defaults to the current date and time. Use the select button to change the defaults.
Status	The default program status is Planned. Options are Active and Completed. The status is changed from Planned, to Active, and Completed during automatic program execution. Manual execution of the program does not affect this field.
Summary	Type a summary that describes the program’s goals.
Type	Choose the program type. Options are Acquire, Retain, Win-Back, Cross-Sell, and Up-Sell.

## Using the Program Flow

The logical flow for both single-stage and multistage programs is designed using the Program Flow view. In this view, you graphically define the program's single-stage or multistage logic by dragging and dropping program components such as stages, segments, lists, campaigns, and events into the workspace.

You can manually execute the program from the Program Flow view or automatically execute the program by scheduling a stage.

Before setting up the Program Flow, verify that the following tasks have been completed:

- Define segments and lists and associate them with the campaigns.
- Define campaigns and associated offers and events.
- Define segment trees, if required.

The Program Flow view displays the selected program's details and the interactive workspace with a palette of objects representing program elements such as stages, segments, campaigns, and internal lists. To set up a program flow, perform the following tasks:

- [Adding a Stage to the Program on page 27](#)
- [Using Repeating Stages Within a Program on page 28](#)
- [Assigning Segments to a Stage on page 28](#)
- [Adding a Campaign to a Stage on page 29](#)
- [Setting Up Waves for a Campaign Load on page 30](#)
- [Adding Imported or Internal Lists to a Campaign on page 31](#)
- [Executing Programs on page 34](#)

## Adding a Stage to the Program

Use the following procedure to add a stage to the program, using the Program Flow workspace.

### ***To add a stage to the program***

- 1** Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2** In the Programs list, drill down on the program and click the Design view tab.
- 3** In the Program Flow workspace, select the Stage object from the palette and drag and drop it on the workspace.
- 4** To complete stage details, double-click the stage object in the workspace.

- 5 In the Schedule view tab, in the Details list, add or modify stage details, using [Table 9 on page 28](#) as a guide.

**NOTE:** To display more fields, click the Details menu button, choose Columns Displayed, and add the columns that you want to appear.

Table 9. Fields in the Stage Detail Form

Field	Comment
Objective	Type the program’s objectives.
Stage Code	The default is the record identifier for the stage. Change the identifier for the stage source code if desired, but make sure the value is unique.
Stage Name	Name of the stage. Change the stage name from the default value to something more meaningful such as Stage 1: Summer Program.
Summary	Type summary text that describes the stage’s implementation.

## Using Repeating Stages Within a Program

In most multistage programs, each stage occurs only once, separated by a specified number of days between stages. In some circumstances, you may wish to have a follow-up stage repeat at a different frequency than a previous stage. For example, in Stage 1, you send a direct mailing with a Web site link to a large audience. In Stage 2, every day you monitor the Web site mentioned in the direct mail offer and call any customers who visit the Web site immediately. In this example, Stage 1 only occurs once, and Stage 2 repeats daily until the end of the campaign.

**NOTE:** When using a repeating stage, be sure that your segment criteria exclude customers that were targeted in a previous wave of the same campaign or the same stage.

### *To specify a repeating stage*

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on your multistage program.
- 3 Click the Schedules view tab.
- 4 In the Schedules link bar, click Details.
- 5 In the Stages list, select the stage that you wish to repeat and complete the fields.

**NOTE:** You cannot repeat Stage 1.

## Assigning Segments to a Stage

You previously defined segments with criteria in the Segment Designer. Now you can assign these segments to the program stage.

**To add segments to the program stage**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on a program.
- 3 In the Program Flow workspace, select a Campaign object.
- 4 In the Objects palette, click and drag the Segment object to the workspace.
- 5 In the Previously Used Segments dialog box, perform one of the following steps:
  - a To create a new segment, click Choose a New Segment and select the location of the segment you want to use, and then click OK.
  - b Select a segment from the list and click OK.

The segment object appears in the workspace.

Repeat [Step 5](#) to add more segments to a stage.

**NOTE:** When you include stand-alone segments (not part of a segment tree) in a stage, the members of the stand-alone segments are not deduplicated against other segments, trees, or lists in the stage.

## Adding a Campaign to a Stage

If you previously defined and saved campaigns with associated offers using the All Campaigns form, you can add them to the program.

**To add predefined campaigns with associated offers**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on a program.
- 3 In the Program Flow workspace, select the Stage object.
- 4 In the Objects palette, select the Campaign object, and drag it from the palette to the workspace.
- 5 In the Pick Campaign dialog box, select the campaign, and click OK.

**NOTE:** If you do not see the campaign you want in the Pick Campaign dialog box, it may be already associated with another program. Although offers are reusable, campaigns are not. Use the My Campaigns or All Campaigns view to determine which program is using the campaign. Then, create a new campaign with a different name and the same offers.

**To define a new campaign with offer from the Pick Campaign dialog box**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on a program.
- 3 In the Program Flow workspace, select the Stage object.
- 4 In the Objects palette, select and drag the Campaign object from the palette to the workspace.

- 5 In the Pick Campaigns dialog box, click New, type a name and description for the campaign and click save.
- 6 In the Pick Campaign dialog box, select the campaign and click OK.
- 7 In the workspace, double-click the Campaign object to open the Campaign Offers view.
- 8 To add an offer, in the Offers list, click New.
- 9 In the Add Offer dialog box, select an offer and then click OK.

**NOTE:** To gauge response to the offer, in some marketing programs, a control segment of customers may be targeted by a test campaign with no associated offer. For details, see ["Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers"](#) on page 116.

## Setting Up Waves for a Campaign Load

If your marketing program consists of a one-time campaign and offer, and you are confident that your organization can handle the volume of responses, you probably do not need to define multiple waves. Siebel Marketing automatically provides a 100 percent fully allocated wave (with a wave code of A and a lag of 0) when a campaign is created.

If you are planning a multistage recurring campaign and anticipate a large distribution list of contacts that will receive an offer, you may want to take a measured approach to distribution and split fulfillment of the offer among a number of waves.

Waves, or set distribution periods, are commonly used to:

- **Test the campaign concept.** An initial sampling to gauge campaign response is followed by a larger distribution.
- **Examine the campaign mechanics.** A measured distribution of the campaign offer provides information to guarantee the campaign mechanism works efficiently from order entry, to fulfillment, to response tracking.
- **Balance the load on a fulfillment center.** In this case, each wave might consist of 10-15% of the list to make sure existing resources can reasonably handle launching a campaign, including managing campaign responses.

In addition to setting up waved distribution periods, you can set a lag time for additional waves that reference the stage launch date, and then split the generated list by a percentage of contacts for each wave period. You can also split by a List Measure. The measure must be included in the list to be available for use in splitting the list.

You can use the List Distribution list to specify a percentage of contacts in each wave that will be sent to each vendor, as well as the output file layout and the method for distributing the list.

Before creating a second wave, decrease the number in the % field of the first wave, which, by default, is 100%. The percent number for all waves cannot exceed 100.

### ***To set up multiple waves for a campaign load***

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.

- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on a program name.
- 3 Click the Schedule view tab.
- 4 In the Schedule link bar, click Details.
- 5 Scroll down to the Waves list and in the Waves list, create a new record.
- 6 Complete the necessary fields, using [Table 10](#) as a guide and save the wave record.

Table 10. Fields in the Campaign Waves Form

Field	Comment
%	The default percentage is 100 for a single wave. If you are planning multiple waves, first reduce the percentage number in the first wave and type the percentage of contacts that will be included in the second wave. The total percent for all waves cannot exceed 100%.
Count	This field shows the corresponding number of contacts to be included in the wave. The number in this field is automatically calculated when you save the record.
Description	Describe the characteristics of the wave.
Lag (Days)	The default is 0. Type the number of days the wave is delayed after loading a campaign. The maximum lag for all the waves cannot be greater than number of days between the start date and end date of the campaign.  The wave is launched when the server processes the Launch Campaign request.  This server process can be automatic, using a scheduled program launch or can be manually started using the right-click menu in the Program Flow workspace.
Wave Code	Type a wave code, up to 10 characters. You cannot save the record without a wave code. The wave code appears as part of the source code for the campaign member if you set up the source code format to include it. The wave code for the default wave is A.

## Adding Imported or Internal Lists to a Campaign

Imported or internal lists of contacts may be added to the campaign. To check the status of an imported list, double-click the list icon in the Program Flow workspace to display the List Contacts and Prospects view.

### **To add a list to the campaign**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 In the Program Flow workspace, select the Campaign object.
- 4 From the Objects palette, select the List object and drag it to the workspace.

- 5 In the Pick Campaign List dialog box, select an imported or internal list, and click OK.  
The List object appears in the workspace, linked to the stage and referencing the campaign.

**NOTE:** To view and edit list details, double-click the List object in the workspace.

## Adding a Segment Tree to a Stage

You can use one segment tree in each stage of your program.

### *To associate a segment tree to a stage*

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 If you are not in the Design view > Program Flow link, click the Design view tab, and then click Program Flow.
- 4 In the Program Flow workspace, select the stage where you want to add the segment tree.
- 5 Drag the Segment Tree icon on to the workspace.
- 6 In the Pick Segment Tree dialog box, click Choose a new Segment Tree.
- 7 In the second Pick Segment Tree dialog box, from the folders, select the Segment Tree.
- 8 In the Pick Segment Tree dialog boxes, click Save and then OK to save the tree in the program flow.

## Allocating Segment Tree Cells for a Stage

After you associate campaigns and a segment tree to a stage of the program, you must allocate each segment tree cell to the campaigns. If you include stand-alone segments in the stage that are not part of the segment tree, the members of the segment will not be deduplicated against members of the tree or against other stand-alone segments. Only segment tree cells are deduplicated against other cells.

### *To allocate segment tree cells for a stage*

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 If you are not in the Design view > Program Flow link, click the Design view tab, and then click Program Flow.
- 4 In the Program Flow workspace, select the segment tree that you want to allocate, and click Allocate Segment Tree.

- 5 In the allocation matrix, perform the following steps:

**NOTE:** In the segment tree structure, each cell appears with the net counts and the priority used for deduplication.

- a If the tree does not match the latest version of the tree that is in the Segment Tree Designer, click Refresh Tree.

This redraws the tree structure (refreshes the stored definition of the tree in the database), and clears any allocations. The row across the top right displays the name and campaign code for each campaign.

- b Select the appropriate check boxes to indicate which cells should be allocated to each campaign.

You can allocate a single cell to more than one campaign, if desired. If you want each cell to receive a single campaign, be sure to check only one box per row. The total allocated count appears along the bottom of the matrix as you check the boxes.

- 6 If you want to enforce a capacity limit for each campaign load, in the Capacity Limit field for the column, type a value.

A value of 0 (zero) will be ignored (no limit).

- 7 Click Save.

**CAUTION:** The Design view will not automatically save your changes to the matrix.

## Creating and Applying Program Templates

You can save any program you create as a reusable program template. The template retains many of the planning details from the program such as the program flow, related campaigns, activity plans, documents, and other details. After you create a program template, you can apply the template to new programs. You can also share the template with other employees in your organization.

Program templates also include child campaign templates for each of the campaigns in the design. For more information about campaign templates, see ["Creating and Applying Campaign Templates" on page 97](#).

### ***To save a program as a program template***

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program that you want to use as a template.
- 3 In the Program form, click the menu button and select Save As Template.  
This menu option is active only if your administrator has given you permission to use this action (using the Marketing access groups).
- 4 In the Save As Template dialog box, type a name, and click OK.
- 5 To make changes to the new template, navigate to the Marketing Templates screen > Program Templates view.
- 6 Query for the template you created in [Step 4 on page 33](#).

- 7 In the template list or form, make the necessary changes.

### ***To apply a program template to a program***

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, create a new program or drill down on the program name to which you want to apply the template.
- 3 In the Program form, click the menu button and choose Apply Template.
- 4 In the Apply Template dialog box, select the template you want to apply and click OK.
- 5 When asked if you want to continue, click OK.

The Message dialog box, appears, confirming that the template was applied.

**NOTE:** You cannot apply a program template if your program already has stages in the program flow. If your program has existing stages, delete all the stages from the program flow before applying the template.

- 6 In the Message dialog box, click OK.

## **Executing Programs**

You can manually execute a program from the Program Flow link in the Design view by using the right-click menu to load and then launch a campaign. Alternatively, you can automatically execute a program by scheduling a stage in the calendar. In the Schedule view, you use the calendar link to automatically invoke the workflow process and execute the server tasks.

# 4

## Marketing Segments and Segment Trees

You can use Siebel Marketing to develop target segments for marketing campaigns. From the segmentation home pages, you can perform the following tasks:

- **Create a segment.** A segment defines a target set of customers or prospects. In most cases, the members of a segment change over time because the criteria are reevaluated against the most current data in your database.
- **Create a segment tree.** A segment tree allows you to select one or more segments and split the segment members into smaller groups (or target cells).
- **View marketing jobs and cache entries.** A Manage Marketing Jobs link on the segmentation home pages allows users to see their own jobs and cache entries. The administrator can see job and cache entries for all users. For more information about managing marketing jobs, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About Segment Designer on page 35](#)
- [About Segment Tree Designer on page 43](#)
- [Creating and Editing Segment Trees on page 44](#)

### About Segment Designer

The Segment Designer allows you to determine how many prospects or customers qualify for a series of criteria. Each Segment is created by adding a sequence of successive criteria blocks to refine the segment membership. With each additional criteria block that you add, the membership can either increase or decrease depending on whether the criteria excluded or added members. You can create a new segment, you can click the new icon or open a saved segment, modify it, and save it with a new name.

Each segment is based on a target level that indicates the type of customer you plan to count and target for your campaigns. For example, target levels may include companies, individuals, or households.

For each target level there are a set of relevant subject areas that contain the information about that target level. These subject areas organize available facts and attributes into common topics such as Orders, Products Owned, Service History, or Campaign History.

Many of the features in the Segment Designer are self-explanatory, and definitions and how-to information appear on each screen. When more information is available than will fit on the screen, a Help link or small help icon appears near the upper right corner. Click the button to see more detailed information.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation on page 36](#)

- [Creating Segments in Segment Designer on page 38](#)
- [Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments on page 39](#)
- [Saving Result Sets for Marketing Segments on page 42](#)
- [Segment Advanced Options on page 43](#)

## Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation

Table 11 defines frequently used segment and segment tree terms.

Table 11. Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation

Term	Description
Criteria Block	Building block of a segment. With each additional criteria block that you add, the membership can either increase or decrease.
Cumulative Count	A type of count computed by the Segment Designer. The cumulative count represents the total number of segment members that qualify for the indicated criteria block as well as all the criteria blocks above it. As you add an additional criteria block at the bottom of the stack, the cumulative count will either increase or decrease depending on whether you add, keep, or exclude segment members from the previous result.
Deduplication	Calculation that removes overlapping members of a segment tree branch. Overlapping members are members of one branch that also qualify for any higher priority branch.
Eligible Audience	A set of criteria that constrain all the members of a segment tree. The eligible audience appears in the top section of the segment tree. The Eligible Audience criteria are defined by selecting a segment with the criteria and then adding the segment to the Eligible Audience section of the Segment Tree. For example, you might have an eligible audience which excludes inactive customers or only selects customers in your geographic region.
Global Audience	A default eligible audience set by an administrator to apply to all segments and segment trees.
Gross Count	<p>In a segment, gross count represents the total number of members that qualify for a specific criteria block, independent of any other criteria block in the segment design. This value tells you how many segment members would be selected if the specific criteria block was the only criterion in your segment.</p> <p>In a segment tree, the gross count represents the total number of members that qualify for a tree branch, taking into account the full set of criteria in the parent branches.</p>

Table 11. Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation

Term	Description
Groups	A group is a combined set of criteria blocks that you want to evaluate together. A group behaves like a set of parentheses, so that the qualifying members for the group are determined before adding or removing the group members from the cumulative segment membership.
List format	Allows you to define the layout of files that you can export for a variety of purposes such as importing targeted customers into a campaign, building a customer email list, or generating a list for execution by a third-party vendor.
Nested Segment	A segment that is embedded within another segment definition. When a nested segment is used, its corresponding counts will apply all the criteria for the nested segment and then add, keep, or exclude the qualifying customers to the cumulative count for the main segment.
Net Count	A type of count computed by the Segment Tree Designer. The net count represents the number of members that qualify for a target cell in the segment tree. The net count displays how many members qualify based on the splitting and sampling criteria. Net count displays the members after deduplication.
Not Included Count	A type of count computed by the Segment Tree Designer. The Not Included Count represents the number of members that were removed from a tree branch because they also qualified for any higher priority cell.
Priority	Each target cell has an assigned priority number, which is used to apply deduplication when some members qualify for more than one target cell. Priority must be an integer value of 1 or higher and no two cells can share the same priority. The smallest value in the tree (usually 1) is the top priority.
Saved Result Set	A fixed set of segment members that are recorded at a particular point in time. They are saved in the database so that they can be reused in the future without reevaluating the criteria again.
Segment	A target set of customers or prospects that qualify for a set of criteria. In most cases, the exact members of a segment will change over time because the criteria are reevaluated against the most current data in your database. However, using saved result sets, you can also save a segment as a static set of customers that were recorded at a particular point in time.
Segment Tree	Allows you to select one or more segments and split the segment members into smaller groups (or target cells). As you split a segment into smaller groups, the groups are displayed in a tree diagram. As in segments, segment trees can save a static set of customers derived from any target cell.

Table 11. Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation

Term	Description
Splitting and Sampling	The action you take to break a segment or segment tree branch into smaller groups.
Subject Area	A set of facts and dimensions that are organized by a common topic, such as Orders, Products Owned, Service History, or Campaign History. Within each subject area you can choose any fact or dimensional attribute to create a criteria for your segment.
Target Cells	An end point branch of a segment tree, meaning that the branch does not have any child branches. Target Cells are the only branches that can be associated with a marketing campaign. Target Cells have an assigned priority number and you can use deduplication to deduplicate members that qualify for more than one target cell.
Target Level	Indicates what type of customer will be counted in the segment membership and included in associated campaigns. For example, target levels may include target levels, companies, individuals, or households. The gross and cumulative counts for a segment are counted based at the selected target level. In most situations, target levels will represent some type of customer, such as an individual or company. However, target levels can also be created by your administrator to allow you to create more advanced segment definitions. For example, advanced target levels can include Assets or Products that a customer owns.
Web Catalog	The Siebel Analytics Web Catalog stores content created with the Segment Designer, Segment Tree Designer, and List Format designer. Content can be organized into folders that are either shared or private. Types of content that can be stored in the Web Catalog include segments, segment trees, list formats, as well as reports, filters, and dashboards created with Siebel Answers.

## Creating Segments in Segment Designer

The Segment Designer applies criteria blocks in a top-down sequence so that each criteria block that you add refines the segment membership of the criteria immediately above it. As you add criteria vertically down the screen, the Cumulative Count keeps track of how many customers have qualified for that criteria and all those above it. At the bottom of the view, the total count of qualifying segment members appears with all criteria applied.

**NOTE:** The Segment Designer computes two types of counts, gross count and cumulative count. For descriptions, see ["Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation" on page 36](#).

For special situations where you need to create a group of criteria blocks (similar to a parentheses), you can drag one criteria block on top of another to create a group. This method will allow you to apply a combined set of criteria as a single constraint on the main segment membership.

The Segment Designer also allows you to include a reference to another existing segment (referred to as a nested segment) within the segment you are building.

After you create a segment, you can save it in one of the folders in the Web Catalog.

If you want to create a new nested segment based on a different target level, you can click the Select Another Target Level button. This action allows you to save the current segment, build a nested segment, and then return to the main segment when you are finished.

**NOTE:** The subject areas that you see are dependent on the security settings specified for you by your site's Administrator.

## About Using the Marketing Segment Panel to Add Criteria to Segments

Use the segment selection pane to add criteria blocks when creating new or changing existing segments. To create a new segment, you can click the new icon or open a saved segment, modify it, and save it with a new name. Using either method, you select the subject area and field that you want to use for a segment criteria. The panel displays all the subject areas that are relevant for the target level for your segment.

You can also add a nested segment to your segment by selecting a folder displayed in the bottom of panel and clicking the segment name.

## Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments

Each criteria block denotes a set of criteria that are evaluated together. This means that any segment member that qualifies for the criteria block must meet all the criteria displayed within the block.

For example, if a segment has the following criteria block:

Product purchased is a blue hat.

And,

Purchase date is December 31, 2003.

This segment finds all customers who purchased a blue hat on December 31, 2003. Because the criteria are in the same block, the criteria are applied to the lowest level dimension related to the criteria, which, in this case, is Purchases (record-level evaluation).

If your segment places criteria into separate criteria blocks, each criteria block finds segment members that satisfy each criteria block. After segment members have been identified, the segment designer determines how many segment members qualified for both criteria blocks.

**NOTE:** If your administrator sets up a dashboard to allow you to see the actual contacts that qualify, you can click the final segment count (at the bottom of the screen) and the dashboard appears.

For example, you might have a segment with the two criteria blocks shown in the following list:

Start With    Criteria block 1: Product purchased is a blue hat.

Keep            Criteria block 2: Purchase date is December 31, 2003.

In this example, the relationship between the criteria are evaluated at the customer level, rather than the purchase level (record level). This segment would find all customers who purchased a blue hat at any time and customers who purchased any product on December 31, 2003. For example, the segment includes customers who purchased a blue hat in February and purchased a black coat on December 31, 2003.

### **To select a field to add as a criteria block**

- 1 Click a subject area near the top of the selection pane and then expand the subfolders to see the available facts and dimensions.
- 2 Click the fact or dimension you want to use.
- 3 In the Create/Edit Filter dialog box, add the filter criteria.  
For details, see the topic about using column filters in *Siebel Analytics User Guide*.
- 4 Click OK.

### **To set properties for a criteria block**

- 1 In a criteria block, click Properties.
- 2 In the Properties dialog box, make changes to any of the following options:
  - In the Label field, type a custom caption for your criteria.
  - Cache the block for future update counts requests.  
Select this option if you want to temporarily cache the results for that criteria block. This option allows you to save time refreshing counts while designing a segment. When a block is cached, updating counts refreshes the cache when the cache is expired or does not exist. By default, the segment designer will not cache any blocks unless you explicitly check this box.
- 3 Click OK.

### **To add filters to a criteria block**

- 1 In a criteria block, click the filter button.
- 2 In the Create/Edit Filter dialog box, add the filter criteria.  
For details, see the topic about using column filters in *Siebel Analytics User Guide*.
- 3 When you are finished adding filters for the criteria block, click OK.

### **To add a filter using an aggregate field**

- 1 Create a new criteria block or click the filter button on an existing block.
- 2 Select the aggregate field such as Order Revenue from the selection pane.
- 3 If you want to group by another field, in the Create/Edit filter dialog box, click Add Aggregate By.

- 4 While the Add Aggregate By dialog box is open, in the selection pane, click the field you want to group by.

### ***To embed a nested segment in your segment design***

- 1 Click the My Segments or Shared Segments folder at the bottom of the selection pane.
- 2 Click the segment you want to add as a nested segment.

### ***To save a new segment***

- 1 Click the save icon in the upper right corner of the screen.
- 2 Select the folder location where you want to save the segment.
- 3 Type a segment name and click OK.

### ***To save changes to a segment***

- 1 Click the save icon in the upper right corner of the screen.
- 2 Click OK.
- 3 In the Save dialog box, click Yes to confirm that you want to replace the previous version.

### ***To view the cumulative counts within a criteria block***

- 1 Click the filter button on the criteria block.
- 2 In the Edit Criteria Block dialog box, click Get Counts.
- 3 The cumulative counts for each criterion in the criteria block appears.

**NOTE:** The starting count for the selected block is based on the cumulative count for the criteria block above your selected block.

- 4 When you are finished viewing the counts, click Back to Editing.
- 5 Click OK.

### ***To update counts in a segment***

- 1 In the upper right of the Edit Segment tab, click Update Counts.
- 2 In the Update Counts dialog box, select a refresh option.
- 3 If you are using the Cache option, you can also select Refresh Cache.  
Selecting Refresh Cache guarantees that you query against the most current data.
- 4 Click OK.

## Saving Result Sets for Marketing Segments

A Saved Result Set is a fixed set of segment members that are recorded at a particular point in time. They are saved in the database so that they can be reused in the future without evaluating the criteria again.

Saved Result Sets can be useful in the following situations:

- When you want to freeze the members of a segment at a specific point in time, so that the membership does not change.
- When you have a very complex segment and you want to store the members of a recently counted segment to save query time.
- When you want to save a branch of a segment tree as a separate segment.

### ***To save a result set for a Marketing segment***

- 1 In the Segment Designer, open the segment.
- 2 Go to the Saved Result Sets view.
- 3 Click the Save Result Set button.
- 4 In the Please save your current segment dialog box, verify segment name and location.
- 5 Click OK to submit the job.
- 6 To cancel the job, click the Cancel/Exit links.

After the request is complete, the newly created saved result set appears.

### ***To use a segment saved result set as a nested segment***

- 1 In the Segment Designer, open the segment.
- 2 Find the saved segment in the Segment Folders in the selection pane.
- 3 Click the segment name to add it to the segment design.
- 4 Click the properties button on the nested segment block.
- 5 Select Use Saved Result Set.
- 6 In the Saved Result Sets dialog box, select one of the following:
  - Always use most recent Saved Result Set
  - Choose a specific result set from the list.
- 7 Click OK twice to save your changes.

### ***To set a segment to always use a Saved Result Set***

- 1 In the Segment Designer, open the segment.

- 2 Click the Advanced Options tab.
- 3 Select the following check box:  
Always use most recent saved result set

**NOTE:** When you use this segment, the most recent result set determines the segment membership.

- 4 Click OK.

## Segment Advanced Options

The Advanced Options page for a segment provides the following options:

- **Purge List Cache (button).** Submits a job to purge all cache entries associated with pulling a list requalified by this segment. You would click this button prior to generating a list to make sure that the list contains the most recent customers in the segment.
- **Cache final segment result set (check box).** When generating multiple lists based on the same segment, you can cache the final set of customers during the first list pull so that subsequent list pulls can use the precreated cache to run faster.
- **Always use the most recent saved result set (check box).** When you use the segment, the most recent result set determines the segment membership.
- **The Campaign Load File Format (field).** Controls which information about the segment members are loaded into the campaign history in the Siebel Marketing transactional database, such as name, address, email address, and other fields.

When you first create a segment, the Campaign Load File Format will be set automatically based on the default setting for the target level. You can select a different File Format, if required. If you are not certain about the effect of changing the File Format, please contact your system administrator.

## About Segment Tree Designer

Using the Segment Tree Designer, you can create a new segment tree or open a saved segment tree by selecting it in the selection pane, making changes, and saving the tree under the same or a new name. After you create a segment tree, you can save it in one of the folders in the Web Catalog in the selection pane. To obtain descriptions for frequently used terms, see ["Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation" on page 36](#).

The Segment Tree Designer has links to additional Help information on each screen. When you need more information, click the Help link in the dialog box or the small help icon next to the item.

## Creating and Editing Segment Trees

The Segment Tree Designer allows you to create and edit segment trees. You can select one or more segments and split the members into smaller groups (or target cells). As you split a segment into smaller groups, the groups are displayed in a tree diagram and the resulting branch will always be the same size or smaller than the parent branch.

Use the Split/Sample option to split any segment or tree branch into smaller groups. You can select from a set of splitting and sampling methods, including Random selection, Nth selection, Ranked, N-tiles, and Values.

**NOTE:** For information about adding a filter using an aggregate field, see [“Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments” on page 39](#).

Each segment tree is based on a target level, which indicates what type of customer you plan to count in the tree. For example, target levels can include target levels, companies, individuals, or households. When deduplication is enforced between target cells in the tree, the deduplication is applied at the target level. For example, if the target level for the tree is Companies, then deduplication makes sure that each company is a member of only one cell.

As you split and sample from the tree branches, some of the branches are end point branches, meaning that they do not have any child splits. These end points are referred to as *Target Cells*, because they are the distinct groups that will be targeted in a marketing program. Each Target Cell displays a priority number. The priority is used to apply deduplication between cells that may contain some of the same members.

The Segment Tree Designer displays several types of counts such as net counts and gross counts. For descriptions, see [“Frequently Used Terms for Marketing Segmentation” on page 36](#).

All the members of the Segment Tree are constrained by the eligible audience. The eligible audience is a set of criteria that appear in the top section of the screen. The criteria are applied to the Eligible Audience by creating a segment with the criteria and then adding the segment to the Eligible Audience section of the Segment Tree. For example, you might have an eligible audience which excludes inactive customers or only selects customers in your geographic region. Optionally, your system administrator can also designate a Global Audience, which is a set of criteria that applies automatically for all segment trees and cannot be removed by other users.

After you create a segment tree, you can save it in one of the folders in the Web Catalog.

The Segment Tree Designer has links to additional Help information on each screen. When you need more information, click the Help link in the dialog box or the small help icon next to the item.

This section contains the following topics:

- [“Creating a Segment Tree in Segment Tree Designer” on page 45](#)
- [“About Segment Tree Branch Properties” on page 45](#)
- [“Splitting Segments or Branches” on page 46](#)
- [“Constraining List Data for a Segment Tree” on page 48](#)
- [“Adding or Removing Constraints to the Eligible Audience” on page 49](#)

## Creating a Segment Tree in Segment Tree Designer

Use the segment tree selection pane to create a new segment tree, select the segments you want to sample in the tree, and select the fields you want to use for the splitting criteria. After you create a segment tree, you can save it in one of the folders in the Web Catalog.

When you begin editing a tree, the selection pane displays all the available segments that you can use in the tree. To add a segment to the segment tree, just open its folder in the selection pane and click the segment name.

As you add splitting and sampling criteria, the selection pane changes to display the available subject areas and fields for the target level on which the tree is based.

**NOTE:** The subject areas that you see depend on the security settings specified for you by your site's Administrator.

### **To create a new segment tree**

- 1 In the Segment Tree Designer, select a Target Level.
- 2 In the selection pane, click the names of the segments you want to add.
- 3 If you want to save the segment tree, click the save icon in the upper right corner of the screen.
- 4 Select the folder location where you want to save the segment tree.
- 5 Type a segment tree name.
- 6 Click OK.

### **To add a segment to a segment tree**

- 1 In the Segment Tree Designer, select the Edit Segment tab.
- 2 Click the folder in the selection pane to display all the segments.
- 3 Click the segment name in the selection pane.  
This adds the segment to the bottom of the segment tree.
- 4 Click the save icon in the upper right corner of the screen.
- 5 Click OK.
- 6 Click Yes in the dialog box to confirm that you want to save over the previous version.

## About Segment Tree Branch Properties

The properties dialog box for a segment tree branch provides the following options:

- **Label.** Used to add a custom label for the branch.  
**NOTE:** Custom labels cannot be entered for embedded segment nodes.
- **Include Remainder with child cells (check box).** When selected, anytime you split or sample this branch, a remainder group is automatically added.

- **Include overlapping members from higher priority cells.** When selected, disables deduplication for this cell.
- **Cache this block for future Update Counts.** Select this option for the following reasons:
  - When selected, this option temporarily caches the members who qualified for that branch, allowing you to save time refreshing counts while designing a segment tree.
  - When a split-by-value node is marked for caching and constrains a secondary list attribute, this attribute is also cached.
  - The segment tree designer caches all tree nodes by default.
- **Anticipated response rate for statistical significance test.** Use this to add the assumed response rate for that cell.
- **Save Result Set (button).** Saves the list of members that qualify for the branch based on the most recent updated counts. When you click this button, you are prompted for a new segment name. The customers in the target cell are extracted and saved to the new segment.
 

**NOTE:** The saved segment will not include any of the original criteria, it will include only the stored list of members.
- **Path.** This displays the Web catalog path of the segment to which an embedded segment node refers.
- **Use Saved Result Set.** When selected for an embedded segment node, you can select the following options:
  - Always use most recent Saved Result Set.
  - Choose a specific result set from the list.

## Splitting Segments or Branches

Use the Split/Sample option to split any segment or tree branch into smaller groups. As you split or sample, the resulting branch will always be the same size or smaller than the parent branch.

You can select from the following sampling methods:

- **Random selection.** The Random method selects a purely random subset of members based on the percentage or count you add for this method. For random selection, you are not required to select a field.
- **Nth selection.** The Nth method will split the branch into N number of equally sized groups. The selection is based on the sequence with which the records are returned from the database. For example, if you select  $N = 4$ , the branch would be split into 4 equally sized groups representing 25% of the original group. For this method, you are not required to select a field.
- **Ranked.** The Ranked method will sort the members of the branch by a field you select and let you choose the top or bottom portion of the ranked list. For example, if you Rank by Total Customer Revenue, you can select the top 10% of the customers with the highest revenue.
- **N-tiles.** The N-tile method will sort the members by a field you select and then split the list into equal sized groups. For example, you might create quartets or deciles based on Total Customer Revenue.

- **Values.** Similar to instructions for creating filters in segment criteria blocks. For information about adding a filter using an aggregate field, see ["Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments" on page 39](#).

### ***To select a field for splitting or sampling criteria***

- 1 Click the action button for the tree branch that you want to split or sample.
- 2 In the menu, choose Split/Sample.
- 3 In the Apply Split/Sample dialog box, select the sampling method you want to use.

**NOTE:** The contents of the dialog box changes when you select different sampling methods.

The available subject areas and fields appear in the selection pane. The list of subject areas is based on the target level for the segment tree.

- 4 In the revised Apply Split/Sample dialog box, complete the fields.
- 5 Click the subject area that contains the field you want.
- 6 Click the folders to expand the subject area.
- 7 Click the field name.

### ***To create random samples***

- 1 Type the number of groups you want to create (1 to N).
- 2 Select whether you will define the group sizes by Percentage or Count.
- 3 Type your percent or count for each group.  
The sum of the percentages cannot exceed 100%.
- 4 Click OK.

### ***To create Nth samples***

- 1 Type the number of groups you want to create (N).
- 2 Click OK.

### ***To create ranked samples***

- 1 Select the field to rank by from a subject area in the selection pane.
- 2 Type the number of groups you want to create (1 to N).
- 3 Select whether you will define the group sizes by Percentage or Count.
- 4 Type your percent or count for each group. Note that the sum of the percentages cannot exceed 100%.
- 5 Click OK.

### **To create N-tile samples**

- 1 Select the field to use for the N-tile from a subject area in the selection pane.
- 2 Type the number of groups you want to create (1 to N).
- 3 Select whether the top group has the lowest or highest values for the selected field.
- 4 Click OK.

## **Using the Values Sampling Method**

Instructions for creating Values samples uses instructions that are similar to creating filters in segment criteria block. For information about adding a filter using an aggregate field, see ["Adding Criteria Blocks to Segments" on page 39](#).

## **Constraining List Data for a Segment Tree**

This option allows you to limit the information in list files to members of the branch. For example, if you have a segment tree based on accounts, you might qualify specific contacts for the accounts based on criteria for that branch.

Additionally, this option allows you to limit the information in list files to any additional items that you constrained on the segment tree branch. The following are scenarios for other types of constraints:

- **Nested Segment Node.** You might have a business-to-business company targeting business accounts. You split by predefined contact segments containing the decision-making contact at each account. You can make sure that you select the correct contact for each account by constraining the contact attribute for the nested segment node.
- **Split-by-Value Node.** You might have a banking company targeting customers split by checking and savings account types. You can make sure that you select the correct account type for each customer by constraining the bank account attribute for the split-by-value node.

You can constrain list data for a tree branch only when the following criteria are met:

- The branch is an embedded segment node in which the target level is different from the target level of the segment tree.
- The branch is a split node created using the values sampling method and the split-by field is not an aggregated measure.

### **To constrain list data for a segment tree**

- 1 In the Segment Tree Designer, locate the branch for which you want to constrain data.  
You can only constrain list data on nested segment tree nodes and split by value nodes.
- 2 Click the actions button.

- 3 In the list of qualified items, select the type of constraint.

The list of attributes that appears depends on the qualified list items setup for that branch or node.

- 4 In the Constrain List Data dialog box, click OK.

## Adding or Removing Constraints to the Eligible Audience

All the members of the Segment Tree are constrained by the Eligible Audience. The eligible audience is a set of criteria that appear in the top section of the screen. The criteria are applied to the Eligible Audience by creating a segment with the constraining criteria and then adding the segment to the Eligible Audience section of the Segment Tree. For example, you might have an eligible audience that excludes inactive customers or only selects customers in your geographic region.

Optionally, your system administrator can also designate a Global Audience, which is a set of criteria that applies automatically for all segment trees and cannot be removed by other users. The Global Audience appears as a block that is more lightly shaded than the rest of the tree. For instructions about setting the Global Audience, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*.

### **To add or remove constraints to the Eligible Audience**

- 1 Click the actions button on the existing eligible audience block.
- 2 To add constraints, choose Add Constraint and perform the following steps:
  - a In the Add additional constraints to the Eligible Audience dialog box, click Browse.
  - b Select the segment that has the criteria you want to use to constrain the audience.
- 3 To remove constraints from the eligible audience, click the delete button on the constraint you want to remove.

**NOTE:** If the constraint is the Global Audience, you cannot remove it.

- 4 Click OK.

## Segment Tree Advanced Options

The Advanced Options page for a segment tree provides the following options:

- **Automatically create remainder cells.** If you do not want the tree designer to automatically create remainders whenever you split a branch, clear this option.
- **Default to include overlapping members from higher priority cells in lower priority cells.** The standard behavior for new trees will always enforce deduplication between target cells. When this option is checked, deduplication will not be enforced for the segment tree. However, you can enable deduplication for specific branches using the branch properties.

- **Campaign Load File format.** The campaign load file format that you want to use to load the members of the segment tree into each campaign.

The campaign load file format controls what information about the segment tree members is loaded into the campaign history in the Siebel Marketing transactional database. This information might include name, address, and email address.

When you first create a segment, the Campaign Load file format will be set automatically based on the default setting for the target level. You can select a different file format, if required. If you are not certain about the effect of changing the file format, contact your system administrator.

- **Purge List Cache (button).** Clicking this button submits a job to purge all cache entries associated with pulling a list requalified by any of the target cells in this tree. You would click this button prior to pulling a list to make sure that the list contains the most recent customers in the target cell.
- **Statistical Significance Parameters.** The following variables are used as inputs for the statistical significance calculation.
  - Confidence interval
  - Error tolerance +/-
  - Default Response Rate
- **Default to cache new tree blocks for future Update Counts (check box).** Controls the default value of the check box named Cache this block for future Update Counts (in the properties of a newly created tree branch).

# 5

## Creating and Using Offers

*Offers* are a way to present content on product and services to current and potential customers as part of a campaign. Offers are associated with a campaign, and then presented to contacts and prospects when the campaign is launched. Offers can be reused in many campaigns, but the campaign is a one-time instance of the offer presented to a customer at a certain point in time.

Offers associated with campaigns are created using the Offers screen. Typically each campaign has a single offer, but you can associate multiple offers with one campaign. For example, a single campaign might have email and Web offer treatments.

Using the Offers views, you can create, edit, and preview reusable multichannel offers, which can be associated with your campaigns.

In addition, you can design personalized HTML and text templates for email, wireless, and Web Offers. You can create emails containing conditional content that is based on contact and prospect attributes. Additionally, emails can contain embedded links to items such as Web offers, and Web surveys that allow the marketer to assess and capture campaign responses. Web Offers can contain embedded links to Web surveys, events and related URLs, downloads, and response forms.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Creating and Modifying Offers - Basic Steps on page 52](#)
- [Creating and Editing Offer Templates on page 55](#)
- [Working with Email Offers on page 65](#)
- [Associating Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and URLs with Offers on page 72](#)
- [Creating a Wireless Offer on page 74](#)
- [Working with Fax Offers on page 74](#)
- [Using Delivery Profiles for Fax Offers on page 75](#)
- [Working with Phone Offers on page 77](#)
- [About Direct Mail Offers on page 78](#)
- [About Media Offers on page 79](#)
- [Associating Literature with Offers on page 79](#)
- [Working with Web Offers on page 80](#)

# Creating and Modifying Offers - Basic Steps

You can create reusable offers in the Offers screen, adding details such as the channel you want to use, activation and expiration dates, templates, literature, and so on. For information about using offer templates to create an offer, see ["Creating an Offer Template and Adding it to the Template List" on page 56](#).

Use the Offers link bar to navigate directly to an offer type. The types of offers that are available to you depend on the features your company is licensed to use.

To create and modify offers, perform the following tasks:

- [Creating an Offer on page 52](#)
- [Modifying an Offer on page 54](#)
- [Applying Globalization Rules to Offers on page 54](#)
- [Associating Products with Offers on page 55](#)

## Creating an Offer

You can use the following procedure and table to create offers. After creating an offer you can associate an offer template with it.

### ***To create an offer***

- 1** Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2** In the All Offers list, create a record.
- 3** Complete the fields, using [Table 12](#) as a guide.

Table 12. Selected Offer Fields

Fields	Comment
Activation Date	Identifies the date that the offer becomes active. You can associate an inactive offer with a campaign, but when you launch the campaign, only active offers will be executed.
Approval Status	Indicates if the offer has been submitted, approved, or declined.
Channel	Identifies the channel used to distribute the offer.  For example, Email, Fax, or Wireless Message.

Table 12. Selected Offer Fields

Fields	Comment
Create Activity check box	Used for email offer templates. Select this option to set activity logging. When the email is sent, an activity is created for each recipient of the email, stating that the email was sent. The activity record is created through the System Activity Object for either the Campaign Recipient or Campaign Position business components.
Delivery Profile	Used when sending fax offers. This field is only available in the fax offers view, not in fax offer records in the All Offers view. Profiles are created using the Communications Administration screen's Communications Drivers and Profiles view. For details, see <a href="#">"Creating a Delivery Profile for Fax Offers" on page 76.</a>
Description	Type a description of the offer.
Email Marketing Server	Used for email offers only. Allows you to select the Email Marketing Server to use when sending an Email Offer. This server provides the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ From and Reply-To header values.</li> <li>■ Connection details for the email sending daemon.</li> <li>■ SMTP envelope Sender address domain (for bounces).</li> <li>■ Base URL to use in constructing Response Forms and Related URLs.</li> <li>■ Web Server base URL (for product catalog items, Web offers, Web surveys, and events).</li> </ul>
Expiration Date	Use the calendar controls to select the offer's expiration date.  Expired offers should not be associated with campaigns because they will not be sent out when the campaign is launched.
Language	For email offers, do not change the value in this field.
Locale	Used to locate the correct, language-specific Web page.
Offer Code	Contains a unique system-populated code that identifies the offer. You can change this code, but make sure the new value is unique.

Table 12. Selected Offer Fields

Fields	Comment
Price List	<p>Used to associate a previously defined price list with this offer.</p> <p>A marketer can create promotional prices for specific products. When an offer recipient clicks a product item hyperlink in an email or Web offer and goes to the product detail Web page, the recipient sees the promotional price that was defined using Siebel Pricer.</p> <p>The set of products associated with the selected price list can be different from the set of products defined in the offer's product list. When a contact responds to an offer, clicks a product link, and goes to the product detail page, the contact sees the promotional price that is defined for that product only if that product is a part of the price list that was selected for this offer. Otherwise, the contact will see the default price for the product.</p>
Subject Text	<p>Used for email offers. The text that you want to appear in the subject line of the email.</p> <p>You can include merge fields in the subject line if desired. For example: Exciting offer for [Field: M/M] [Field: First Name] [Field: Last Name].</p>
Subscription List	<p>Allows you to select a marketing list of type Subscription List and associate this list with this offer. The subscription list may already have contacts or prospects or be empty.</p>
Type	<p>Designates the purpose of the offer. For example, Up-Sell or Cross-Sell.</p>

## Modifying an Offer

You can use the following procedure to modify offers. To modify an offer

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 In the All Offers list, select the offer that you want to change.
- 3 Make the necessary changes, using guidelines in [Table 12 on page 52](#).

## Applying Globalization Rules to Offers

Each offer record contains a locale value. The locale is used to locate and display the localized landing page for response forms. When you create an email offer record, the locale value defaults to the value set in your profile. You can change the value to match your business needs. When you launch the campaign, the locale assigned to the email offer will be used for all recipients.

The default character set for emails is UTF-8. This is the value set in the Charset attribute for the email's Content-Type header. If you wish to change the Charset attribute, you need to select an Email Marketing Server profile with the correct Charset attribute or request a System Administrator to make the changes necessary to the Email Marketing Server profile that you use.

**NOTE:** Internally, templates are maintained using the UTF-8 character set. Therefore, the character set should be able to represent characters for any written language.

The character set for the template you upload should be the default character set configured for the operating system you are using (the current code page on Windows or UTF-8 on UNIX). On UNIX platforms, an environment variable (SIEBEL\_FILE\_ENCODING) can be assigned to a character set to use in place of UTF-8 when reading templates. If the original template file contains a BOM (Byte Order Mark), the character set of the template file will be automatically detected. This automatic detection is useful when the character set differs from the platform default character set.

**CAUTION:** Be careful when using a character set for outgoing email that differs from the platform default character set or UTF-8. If the Email Marketing Server character set is not compatible with the character set of the original template file that is read from disk), the resulting email text might be unreadable.

For instructions about how to assign the correct character set to an email campaign, see [“Assigning Character Sets for the Email Marketing Server” on page 185](#).

## Associating Products with Offers

You can associate predefined products with the offer. Ideally, you should only select a subset of products from the price list associated with an offer, because there is a many-to-one relationship between the products and the price list. The products that you associate with the offer determine which product catalog page links can be embedded in Email and Web offers.

### *To associate a product with an offer*

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 In the All Offers list, select the offer and click the Products select button.
- 3 In the Products dialog box, in the Available list, select one or more products, and then click Add to copy them to the Selected list.
- 4 Click OK.

## Creating and Editing Offer Templates

Offer templates are available in Siebel Marketing, Siebel Web Marketing, and Siebel Campaigns. You can create a template using HTML tools or text editors such as Microsoft Front Page and Windows Notepad. After creating a template, you add the file to the template list and associate the template with an offer. After you associate a template with an offer you can edit (for example, adding personalization elements), verify, and preview text and HTML templates by drilling down on the template name hyperlink.

Offer templates can be associated with the following offer types:

- **Fax offers.** For more information on Fax offers, see [“About Fax Offers” on page 74](#).
- **Email offers.** When creating an email offer, you can use the Email Templates view tab to associate a template with the offer.
- **Web offers.** When creating a Web Offer, you can use the Edit Web Offer view tab to associate a template with the offer.

You can modify template files using your preferred HTML editor or Siebel HTML Editor. When you upload the changed template to the server, you overwrite the original template and all the offers associated with that template inherit the edited template.

Before a template has been added to (associated with) an offer, you can modify the template using your preferred HTML editor. After an offer template has been added to an offer, you can edit the template and add personalization elements in the Offers screen (Edit views).

**CAUTION:** You should establish a version-control policy for template changes. Any changes made to a template through the Edit views will appear in all of the offers that use that template. Templates can be found in the Marketing file system.

To create and edit offer templates, perform the following tasks:

- [Creating an Offer Template and Adding it to the Template List on page 56](#)
- [Using Hyperlinks \(HREF\) in an Offer Template on page 57](#)
- [Editing a Template That Is Not Associated with an Offer on page 58](#)
- [Editing a Template That Is Associated with an Offer on page 59](#)
- [About Personalization Categories on page 62](#)

## Creating an Offer Template and Adding it to the Template List

Offer templates are usually created with a file type of text (TXT) or HTML (HTM or HTML). You create the template using third-party HTML tools and text editors such as Microsoft Front Page and Windows Notepad.

**NOTE:** You can create offer templates with other types of files such as PDF and DOC. Because you use offer templates primarily for email and Web offers, HTML and text files are the most common file types used.

After creating the template using a third-party tool, you must add the new template to the Offer Templates list so that you can associate it with an offer.

### ***To create an HTML or text offer template***

- 1 Create an HTML template, using third-party HTML or text editor of your choice.
  - a Using Microsoft Word, Front Page, Notepad, or another editor, create a new file.

- b For HTML templates, save the file using an HTM file extension.

**CAUTION:** Take care when using quotation marks in personalization elements. Some applications replace straight quotation marks (") with curly (also called smart) quotation marks ("). Curly quotation marks cause errors when used in personalization elements.

- 2 If it does not already exist, create a subdirectory of your HTML templates directory and call it Images.

In this directory, you store the graphics that will be used in the offer. Make sure that you refer to each image as follows, replacing image.gif with the name of the embedded image:

```
<IMG BORDER=0 SRC="http://<server name>/Web Marketing/images/image.gif">
```

**NOTE:** You cannot use HTML or embedded images in text email. However, some email readers display images that the sender attached to a text email at the end of the text email.

- 3 Add the template you created to the Offer Templates list using the following procedure, "To add a template to the Offer Templates list."
- 4 Copy the images you embedded in your offer to the subdirectory you created or the image folder you referenced in Step 2.

### **To add a template to the Offer Templates list**

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 In the Offers link bar, click Offer Templates.
- 3 In the Offer Template list, create a record.
- 4 Complete the fields to add the offer template to the list.
  - a In the Name field, type a name for the template.
  - b Click the File Name select button and select the template file.

## **Using Hyperlinks (HREF) in an Offer Template**

Siebel Marketing can perform a special processing task for HTML-based emails and Web offers. A URL address typed directly into the body of an HTML template, such as <http://www.siebel.com>, is not recognized as a hyperlink by the HTML parser. The generic HTML syntax for a hyperlink is:

```
<a href="target url">highlighted text or picture</a>
```

The link includes both the URL and the anchor, which is the text or image that appears in the template and links to the URL. Thus, if you want to create a link to the URL <http://www.siebel.com> and display Siebel Web site as the text in the message, you must type the following:

```
<a href="http://www.siebel.com">Siebel web site</a>
```

Using this method, Web offers, response forms, and product items are replaced differently in HTML templates from the way they are replaced in text templates. The following list describes the default method for processing hyperlinks.

- For Web offers, Web surveys, and product links, Siebel Marketing creates the hyperlink so that the hyperlinked text is the Web offer name, Web survey name, or product name such as in the following reference:

```
<a href="[Web Offer: 10% discount offer]">10% discount offer</a>
```

For more information, see ["About Personalization Categories" on page 62](#).

- For Response forms, Siebel Marketing creates the hyperlink so that the hyperlinked text is the same as the Response form's description in the Response Types view. The hyperlinked text for a response form can be modified in the Response Types view, where, for each response form, a description field represents the value used for highlighted text.

These default methods for processing hyperlinks in Siebel Marketing can be modified. You can put an asterisk (\*) before the Siebel tag to tell the Siebel application that you will manually define the hyperlink format in the HTML body. The asterisk tells the Siebel application not to create the hyperlink.

For example, instead of pasting [Web Offer: Great Discount], the marketing manager can type the following:

```
<a href="[*Web Offer: Great Discount]">whatever I want to highlight be it text or picture</a>
```

In this case, Siebel Marketing replaces the Web Offer with the proper URL but does not create the HREF syntax. You can then create a Web offer link, product item link, and response form link with any text or picture you desire.

**NOTE:** Do not use the Siebel HTML Editor when inserting an HTML tag. The editor does not allow you to directly alter the HTML source.

## Editing a Template That Is Not Associated with an Offer

If you have not added a template to an offer, you can change it using the third-party application that you used to create the file, for example, Microsoft FrontPage or Notepad.

### ***To modify and upload an offer template file***

- 1** Make the necessary modifications to the template file saved on your local drive, using the same text editor used to create the file.
- 2** Save and close the file.
- 3** Navigate to the Offers screen > Offer Templates view.
- 4** In the Offer Template list, select the template you just changed.
- 5** Upload the changed template file using the following steps:
  - a** In the File Name field, click the select button.
  - b** In the Add Attachment dialog box, click Browse.
  - c** Select the file and click Open.

## Editing a Template That Is Associated with an Offer

After you add a template to an offer, you can edit it in the following ways:

- **Edit a template in the Offers screen.** Make basic changes to your template using Siebel HTML Editor or a text editor. In the Edit views of the Offers screen, you click Edit Template in the Edit Email, Edit Web Offer, or Edit Fax view tabs.

If you created your template as an HTML file, Siebel HTML Editor renders the HTML source (tags and text) and allows you to modify the rendered HTML. It does not allow you to modify the HTML source directly, so this is not the tool to use to add HTML tags explicitly into your template.

If you created your template as a text file, a text editor displays the offer contents for editing. Previewing allows you to verify the offer's syntax, including merge fields and embeddable objects.

- **Modify a template using your default HTML editor.** Use to export the template file, make changes, and import the template file back into the Siebel file system. Examples of content editors are Microsoft Front Page and Notepad. For more information, see ["Editing a Template Using Your Default HTML Editor"](#) on page 60.

### *To edit an offer template in the edit views of the Offers screen*

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 From the Offers link bar, select an email, fax, Web, or Wireless offer or in the Offers list, select an email, fax, Web, or wireless offer and click the appropriate templates view tab.
- 3 Select the template you want to change and click the appropriate edit view tab.
- 4 Click Edit Template to open the template for editing and start the appropriate editor.

One of the following editors starts:

- **Text editor.** You use this tool to make simple changes to the text. The text editor starts by default, if the selected template is a text (.txt) file.
  - **Siebel HTML editor.** You can use this tool to make more complex changes than you can make in a text editor. The Siebel HTML editor starts by default, if the selected template is an HTML file (HTM or HTML file extension). For more detail, see ["Using the Siebel HTML Editor"](#) on page 60.
- 5 To edit the contents of the template, click in the Template Contents workspace to display the editor's toolbar.

The editor's toolbar does not display until you click in the workspace.

- 6 From the Personalization Categories list, select a category type (for example, Merge Fields), and then copy (CTRL+C) and paste (CTRL+V) personalization elements from that category into the email offer template.

For details, see ["About Personalization Categories"](#) on page 62.

- 7 When you finish making changes, click Save Template.
- 8 Click Verify & Preview to preview your changes and verify that the template still performs correctly.

Repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 8](#) to continue editing the template.

## Using the Siebel HTML Editor

You can use Siebel HTML Editor to make changes to your HTML template. To make more complex changes than allowed in the Siebel HTML Editor, see ["Editing a Template Using Your Default HTML Editor" on page 60](#).

To make changes using the Siebel HTML Editor, you type your changes directly in the workspace. In addition, you can use the editing toolbar at the bottom of the Template Contents workspace for formatting text. Most of the buttons on the toolbar are the same buttons that appear in standard text editing software. For more information about the export and import buttons, see ["Editing a Template Using Your Default HTML Editor" on page 60](#).

**CAUTION:** In the HTML editor, you must explicitly save your changes using one of the save functions in the application. You can click the Save Template button when it is available, or you can select Save Record after clicking a list or form menu button. The CTRL+S keyboard shortcut does not work in the HTML Editor workspace. If you want to use this keyboard shortcut, you must step off the editor into another field before clicking CTRL+S.

## Editing a Template Using Your Default HTML Editor

If you want to make more complex changes or if you are more comfortable making changes in your HTML editor, you can export the template file, use your preferred (default) HTML editor, and import the file back into the Siebel file system. To use this method, perform the following tasks:

- Set your default HTML editor.
- Map the User Environment variable called TEMP to your local Temp folder.
- Edit a template file using your default HTML editor.

### ***To set your default HTML editor***

- 1 Open your Web browser.
- 2 Set your default HTML editor in the browser's user preferences.

For example, in Microsoft Internet Explorer, you find the HTML editor setting in the Tools application menu, using the following path:

Tools > Internet Options > Programs

- 3 Save your changes.

### ***To map the User Environment variable to your local temporary folder***

- 1 From the Windows task bar, choose Start > Settings > Control Panel.
- 2 Double-click System and perform [Step 3](#) for Windows NT or [Step 4](#) for Windows 2000.
- 3 If you use Windows NT, perform the following steps.
  - a Click Environment.

- b** Select the User Variables window.
  - c** In the User variables for [username] workspace, in the Variables column, select TEMP.
  - d** Click Set.
- 4** If you use Windows 2000, perform the following steps.
- a** Click the Advanced tab and click Environment Variables.
  - b** In the User variables for [username] workspace, in the Variables column, select TEMP and click Edit.
  - c** In the Edit Variables dialog box, in the Variables Value field, type c:\temp.
  - d** Click OK in each dialog box until you return to your desktop.

***To edit a template file using your default HTML editor***

- 1** Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2** From the Offers link bar, select the type of offer.
- 3** In the selected offers list, select an offer, and click the appropriate templates view tab.
- 4** Select the template you want to change, and click the appropriate edit view tab.
- 5** Click Edit Template to open the template for editing, and start the appropriate editor.
  - a** To display the editor's toolbar, click in the Template Contents workspace.  
The editor's toolbar does not display until you click in the workspace.
  - b** Edit the contents of the template.
- 6** In the HTML Editor toolbar, click the export button.  
The default editor starts and the template file opens for editing.
- 7** In the Editor menu, choose save to save the template file on your local machine.  
This saves the template file in your desktop/temp directory with the file name of template.htm.
- 8** Make changes to the template and save the file.  
**CAUTION:** Do not change the file name. If you change the file name, the application will not be able to automatically locate the file and you will have to manually locate the file and location while importing.
- 9** In the HTML Editor toolbar, click the import button.
- 10** In the Import dialog box, select the template you want to import, and click Open.  
By default, template.htm is automatically selected. If you need to import a different file, locate and select the appropriate file.
- 11** In the Edit Email list, click Save Template.

## About Personalization Categories

Personalization categories are categories of supported embeddable object types. Depending on which category type you select, the Personalization Elements list contains the available elements for that category.

The available personalization categories are:

- Events
- Merge Fields
- Product Catalog Items
- Related URLs
- Response Forms
- Web Offers
- Web Surveys

### About the Merge Fields Personalization Category

Merge fields allow you to customize offers by contact or prospect. All contacts or prospects can have multiple fields associated with them, each field defining some attribute of a contact or prospect (for example, the person's last name, their first name, or their account number). For each unique contact or prospect, the value of these fields may differ. You insert the merge field personalization element in the text and then the value of the Contact or Prospect field is populated into the text where you inserted the merge field personalization element.

For example, you might have two prospects with the first names of Sally and Fred. The following simple example shows how the personalization element appears in the offer before and then after the contact or prospect field is populated:

#### Before population in the Offer Text

Hello [Field: First Name]!

#### After Values are Populated in the Offer

When Sally receives the offer, she sees the following:

Hello Sally!

When Fred receives the offer, he sees the following:

Hello Fred!

In some contact or prospect records, a value might not exist for a non-numeric merge field. For example, the database record from which the value comes is a NULL entry. When the contact or prospect field is populated, the merge field might default to one of the following values:

- **Empty string.** The value is an empty string (a string containing no characters).
- **Unspecified.** The value is the word Unspecified.

For Web offers, surveys, events, and URLs to be available as personalization elements Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and Related URLs categories, you must add the records to the Web Offers, Web Surveys Related Events, or Related URLs lists. For details, see ["Associating Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and URLs with Offers" on page 72.](#)

You can copy any field from the Personalization Elements list and paste it into the body of the email message. For related information, see ["Using Hyperlinks \(HREF\) in an Offer Template" on page 57.](#)

For example you might want to personalize the offer with the contact's name. For example, Exciting Offer for [Field: First Name] [Field: Last Name].

Using the Merge Fields category, you would select the personalization element [Field: First Name] and press CTRL+C to copy it. Then, you would paste (CTRL+V) the field or fields into the offer template text, or the subject line of the email. You would repeat this procedure to add a last name.

Typically, the tags for personalization elements are enclosed in brackets ([ and ]).

During run time, the target values are substituted for these personalization elements. The response forms, product links, Web offer links, and Web survey links are encoded so that they become URL links containing the destination address, with campaign, offer, and recipient codes included. Thus, the URL in any text-based email can become long. The following list contains guidelines for setting up personalization elements:

- The Merge Fields list is driven by your system configuration. If you are using the advanced approach, merge fields can be extended using fields from the segmentation module. For more information, see ["Using Merge Fields in an Email Offer" on page 63.](#)
- The list of Merge Fields includes a calculated field called Current Date. This merge field is replaced by the Campaign Send Date when the campaign is launched.
- The Product Catalog Items are limited to those defined for the Product catalog page for the products associated with the offer.
- The list of Web offers is limited to those defined for this offer in the Related Web Offers list (view tab).
- The list of Web surveys is limited to those defined for this offer in the Related Web Surveys view tab.
- The list of related events is limited to those events defined for this offer in the Related Events link bar. When you add a related event, you will only see events with active dates and that have a status code of Executing or In Progress.
- Related URLs allow you to embed hyperlinks to offer and generic Internet Web pages in an offer. When this hyperlink is clicked on by a Contact or Prospect a Campaign Response is recorded.
- Typically, response forms are Web forms that a contact or prospect can use to respond to an offer through the Web. The response forms for an email offer are Unsubscribe from List, Subscribe to List, Read Receipt, One Click Unsub, Forward to Friend, Request Unsubscribe, Request More Info, and Request Call Back.

## Using Merge Fields in an Email Offer

Your application can be configured to use email merge fields in the following ways:

- **Basic.** Provides a static set of merge fields based on the campaign recipient business component. These merge fields are available when your organization has not licensed or deployed the marketing segmentation module.
- **Advanced.** Provides a flexible set of merge fields based on data from any data source or table within the Siebel application. The merge fields in this case are controlled by the Personalization Format (Email Server list format) that you select for the email offer.

In the Basic configuration, each category has a number of personalization elements. For example, the Merge Fields category has the following personalization elements (depending on the personalization format used):

- [Field: M/M]
- [Field: First Name]
- [Field: Middle Name]
- [Field: Last Name]
- [Field: Account]
- [Field: Account Location]
- [Field: Job Title]
- [Field: Work Phone #]
- [Field: Home Phone #]
- [Field: Cellular Phone #]
- [Field: Fax Phone #]
- [Field: Email Address]
- [Field: Current Date]
- [Field: Source Code]

In the Offers screen, in the Advanced view tab, you need to select the appropriate personalization format for the email offer in the email offer form. When you create an email offer, the values for the Email Marketing Server and Personalization Format automatically are set based on settings established by your administrator.

If CHANGEME is the value in the Personalization Format field, then you have not selected a set of merge fields. If a path name appears in the Personalization Format field, you should see merge fields in the Edit Email view tab, after selecting Merge Fields in the Personalization Categories field.

### ***To select a Personalization Format (merge fields) for an email offer***

- 1** Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2** In the Offers list, drill down on the name of the email offer.
- 3** Click the Edit Email view tab.
- 4** Click the Personalization Format select button.

- 5 In the dialog box, select the appropriate format from the folders that appear.  
For more information about creating Email Server formats, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*.
- 6 In the Edit Email form, from the Personalization Categories drop-down list, choose Merge Fields.  
The merge fields should appear in the Personalization Elements list.

## Working with Email Offers

Email offers are available in Siebel Marketing. For instructions about how to create an email offer, see [“Creating an Offer” on page 52](#). For instructions about how to modify an email offer, see [“Modifying an Offer” on page 54](#).

For information about working with email offers, see the following topics:

- [About Email Offers on page 65](#)
- [Associating a Template with an Email Offer on page 66](#)
- [Adding Attachments to Email Offers on page 67](#)
- [About Merge Fields in Email Offers on page 67](#)
- [About Email Offer Response Forms on page 67](#)
- [About Creating Conditional Content on page 69](#)
- [If-Then-Else Personalization Element on page 70](#)
- [Named Blocks Personalization Element on page 71](#)

## About Email Offers

Using the Email Offers view, a marketer can design and distribute a personalized email offer to target recipients of a campaign. An email offer can be associated with a price list for various products. If the recipient clicks on a product link in an email offer, the product detail page will show the promotional price for that product rather than the list price.

The Email Offers view includes the Offer Details, Email Templates, Edit Email, Delivery Profile, Attachments and Advanced tabs.

- **Offer Details.** This form contains additional fields that you can use if the email offer requires approvals from your company’s marketing and legal departments. It also provides a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field and allows you to specify the email offer’s Subject Text, the Email Marketing Server (Reply-To and From headers, Email Marketing Daemon configurations, and Web Server URLs) that will be used to distribute the offer, and Personalization Format to use with this offer.
- **Email Templates.** This form allows you to attach templates containing the content of your email offer. To be selected in this view, templates must first be added to the Offer Templates list. For details, see [“Creating and Editing Offer Templates” on page 55](#).

- **Edit Email.** This form allows you to edit the template content as well as select Personalization Categories such as Product Catalog Item. Category elements can be copied and pasted into the template.
- **Delivery Profile.** This read-only list provides a list of the Email Marketing Server parameters for the Email Marketing Server that is associated with the offer.
- **Attachments.** This list allows you to include literature items with your email offer. These items are delivered as attachments to the email when the campaign is launched.
- **Advanced.** Contains the Related Web Offers, Related Web Surveys, Related Events, and Related URLs lists. These lists allow you to specify the Web offers, Web surveys, events, and URLs that you plan to include as hyperlinks in the email offer. Adding these elements allows you to embed them as a Personalization Element. Web Surveys are created using Siebel SmartScript. For more information, see *Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide*.

Whenever an offer recipient clicks a Web offer, Product Catalog Item, or Related URL link in an email offer, the click is captured as a response. The available response types are Clicked On Web Offer, Clicked On Web Survey, Clicked On Product URL, and Clicked on URL.

**NOTE:** Siebel Events views are not currently included in the Siebel Web Marketing application. Therefore, if you embed a related event in an email offer, related events must be directed to the Web Server on which Siebel Events is installed. To accomplish this, the Web Server field must contain the location of the Web Marketing Web Server and the location of the Events server. For more information see the Web Server field in [Table 12 on page 52](#).

## Associating a Template with an Email Offer

This section describes how to associate a template with an email offer. To edit the offer template, see [“Creating and Editing Offer Templates” on page 55](#).

### **To associate an offer template with an email offer**

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen > Email Offers view.
- 2 In the Email Offers list, select the offer and click the Email Templates view tab.
- 3 In the Email Templates list, create a new record.
- 4 In the Email Templates form, complete the necessary fields.
  - a The sequence field is automatically populated. Change the sequence if you are adding multiple templates with rich and plain format. The sequence field includes email attachments. Therefore, when you add your first template, you might see a sequence number other than 1.

For example, if you have two templates (one HTML and one text) associated with the email offer, adjust the sequence so that you associate the plain format (text) first and the rich format (HTML) last. This change satisfies the MIME Alternate standard. The MIME Alternate standard defines a way to send both the text and HTML content together within the body of a single email message. The email program displays only the part that it has been configured to display.

- b In the Template Name field, click the select button.  
You can associate one text template and one HTML template with the offer.
  - c In the Pick Offer Template dialog box, select the template record and click OK.
- 5 Save the record to associate the template with the offer.

## Adding Attachments to Email Offers

Use the following procedure to add literature items as email offer attachments.

### *To add an attachment*

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen > Email Offers view.
- 2 In the Email Offers list, drill down on the offer name.
- 3 Click the Attachments view tab.
- 4 In the Attachments list, create a new record.
- 5 Click the Name select button, select the literature file you want to attach, and click OK.
- 6 In the Attachments Label field, type an attachments label for each file.

## About Merge Fields in Email Offers

You can use merge fields in the body of a text or HTML email offer, in the same way that they are used within the text or HTML of other offer types. Additionally, merge fields may be used in the following areas related to email offers:

- **Subject Text field of the email offer.** The text that you want to appear in the subject line of the email.
- **From Address parameter value.** A parameter of the Email Marketing Server in User Delivery Profiles.
- **Reply To Address parameter value.** A parameter of the Email Marketing Server in User Delivery Profiles.

## About Email Offer Response Forms

Response forms are links to Web pages to which the email recipient is directed. Response types are fields in a response record. A response record might be generated by the email recipient clicking the response form link or by completing a form on the Web page to which they have been directed.

[Table 13 on page 68](#) contains a list of response forms that are unique to email offers and a brief description of each.

## Adding Response Forms to Email Offers

You can include a variety of response forms in an email offer. Whenever a customer receives the email offer and clicks on the hyperlink for a response form, responses are automatically created for the campaign.

### **To add a response form to an email offer**

- 1** Navigate to the Offers screen > Email Offers view.
- 2** In the Email Offers list, drill down on the email offer name.
- 3** Click the Edit Email view tab.
- 4** Click Edit Template.
- 5** From the Personalization Categories drop-down list, select Response Forms using [Table 13 on page 68](#) as a guide.  
The available response forms will appear in the Personalization Elements box.
- 6** Copy the Response Form tag from the left hand side using CTRL+C and paste into the desired location in the template using CTRL+V.
- 7** When you are finished editing, click Save Template.

Table 13. Response Forms and Descriptions

Response Form	Description
Requested Unsubscribe	Navigates customers to a Web page where they can enter communication preferences by channel. For more information, see <a href="#">"Setting Up and Using Web Marketing" on page 173</a> .
Requested More Info	Navigates customers to a Web page where they can provide contact information and from where your company can send more information such as brochures or other collateral.
Requested call back	Navigates customers to a Web page where they can provide contact information and from where your company can arrange a follow-up phone call.
Forward to friend	Navigates customer to a page where they can add the email address of friends and from where your company can forward the message.
One Click Unsub	Automatically selects the Do Not Email check box on the contact profile and displays a confirmation message to the customer that states that they have been unsubscribed from all lists.

Table 13. Response Forms and Descriptions

Response Form	Description
Read Receipt	<p>Detects that the email message has been opened by the customer. The customer is not aware of this hidden event.</p> <p>This link is used only in HTML to embed a 1 x 1 pixel image in the email offer at the location where a response form is placed. If the recipient of the email offer opens the email, this image is retrieved from the Email Marketing Server and a Read Receipt response type record is created. The following is a list of some ways a read receipt can be blocked:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Newer email clients might prevent the display of embedded images until the user allows them to be displayed.</li> <li>■ Ports used to make the request for the image might be blocked at the recipient's firewall.</li> <li>■ If you place the read receipt image in the HTML part of a multipart MIME email message and the recipient sets up their email program to read text emails only, the Read Receipt image request will not occur.</li> </ul>
Subscribe to List	<p>Navigates customers to a Web page where a confirmation message displays stating that they have been subscribed to the list. This response automatically associates the contact or prospect ID of the respondent with a subscription list associated with the offer.</p>
Unsubscribe from List	<p>Navigates customers to a Web page where a confirmation message displays stating that they have been unsubscribed. An Unsubscribe from List response type record is generated, and their contact or prospect record is removed from the subscription list associated with the offer.</p>

## About Creating Conditional Content

There are two personalization elements that can be used to generate conditional content within an email offer. Each of these is made up of the following personalization elements:

- **If-Then-Else.** Determines if a block of text or HTML should be removed from an outgoing email by verifying if a Merge field value is defined. The merge field is defined if it is NOT an empty string or, for numeric merge fields, if it is not a value of 0 (zero).
  - If the merge field is defined, the block of text or HTML remains in the outgoing email.
  - If the merge field is not defined, the block of text or HTML is removed from the outgoing email.
- **Named Blocks.** Used to decide whether or not to insert a block of text or HTML into an outgoing email by comparing one string to another. One string is compared to another to determine if the block of text or HTML will be inserted.
  - If the two strings are identical, the block is inserted.
  - If the two strings are not identical, the block is not inserted.

The components of these personalization elements must be placed in the correct locations in the text or HTML email offer or an error will occur. Additionally, in HTML, they should be placed in the HTML source, not the rendered HTML. This restriction means that you cannot use the Siebel HTML editor for placing these element components.

## If-Then-Else Personalization Element

The following is a list of If-Then-Else personalization element components:

- **\$(if [Field: FieldName]).** The If component is required to start an If-Then-Else personalization element. It determines if the merge field named [FieldName] has a value. If there is a value for [FieldName], the text between this If-Then-Else component and the next If-Then-Else component is not removed from the email.
- **\$(elseif [Field: FieldName]).** The Else-If component is the same as the If component, except that it is used after the start of the If-Then-Else personalization element.
- **\$(else).** The Else component is used after a \$(if) or \$(elseif) component. When an analysis of a preceding \$(if) or \$(elseif) component results in the preceding block of text or HTML being removed from the outgoing email, the \$(else) component's block of text or HTML is not removed from the outgoing email. If the preceding \$(if) or \$(elseif) component does not remove its block of text or HTML, the \$(else) component removes its block of text or HTML.
- **\$(endif).** The End-If component closes the current If-Then-Else personalization element.

The following is a simple example of the use of an If-Then-Else personalization element. If the first name is defined, the contact's or prospect's first and last name appears. If the first name is not defined, only the last name appears:

```
$(if [Field: First Name])
Dear [Field: First Name] [Field: Last Name],
$(else)
Dear Mr. or Mrs. [Field: Last Name],
$(endif)
```

Nesting If-Then-Else personalization elements (placing one within another) is an acceptable practice. The following is an example of nesting these elements:

```
$(if [Field: First Name])
    $(if [Field: Last Name])
    Dear [Field: First Name] [Field: Last Name],
    $(else)
    Dear [Field: First Name],
    $(endif)
$(elseif [Field: Last Name])
```

```
Dear Mr. or Mrs. [Field: Last Name],
$(else)
To whom It May Concern:
$(endif)
```

Using of indentation indicates the nesting of one If-Then-Else personalization element within another. This is not necessary, but makes it easier to read. Also, notice that each component is on its own line. This use of separate lines is also not necessary, but makes reading the offer easier.

After the Email Marketing Server makes the decision about what text or HTML to remove, the If-Then-Else personalization element components are also removed (including their trailing line breaks).

## Named Blocks Personalization Element

The following list contains the Named Blocks personalization element components:

- **\$(InsertBlock "MatchString")**. Insert Block component. A block of text or HTML will be inserted at the location this component is placed when MatchString is identical to the MatchString of a Define Block component. This comparison is case sensitive.
- **\$(DefineBlock "MatchString")**. Define Block component. Starts a block of text or HTML that will be inserted in place of an Insert Block component when MatchString is identical to the MatchString of the Insert Block component.
- **\$(EndBlock)**. End Block component. Ends a block of text or HTML started with the Define Block component.

**NOTE:** The string comparison is case sensitive.

### Example of Using the Named Blocks Personalization Element

The following is a simple example of the use of a Named Blocks personalization element:

```
<P>The temperature of your favorite color is $(InsertBlock "[Field: Favorite
Color]").</P>
$(DefineBlock "Red")
<B>hot</B>
$(EndBlock)
$(DefineBlock "white")
<B>cold</B>
$(EndBlock)
$(DefineBlock "Blue")
```

```
<B>cool</B>
```

```
$(EndBlock)
```

In this example, the merge field named Favorite Color is the value Red. After population, the following sentence appears:

The temperature of your favorite color is hot.

The HTML source will read:

```
<P>The temperature of your favorite color is <B>hot</B>.</P>
```

If there is no match for an Insert Block component match string, then the Insert Block component is not replaced by any text or HTML. After the Email Marketing Server resolves all matches, the remaining Named Block personalization element components are removed (including their trailing line breaks and any text or HTML between Define Blocks and End Blocks).

**NOTE:** The Define Block and End Block components may be placed within the HTML HEADER tags. This placement can make the email offer more readable.

## Associating Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and URLs with Offers

The ability to associate Web offers, Web surveys, Events, and Related URLs with offers is available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Web Marketing.

Each offer element (Related Events, Web surveys, Web offers, and Related URLs) can be associated with any offer type with one exception. Web offers cannot include links to other Web offers. However, you can relate the same Web offer to more than one email offer. For example you might have an eService Web Offer and want to associate that Web offer with multiple email offers. In this case, each of these email offers will have a link to that same Web offer.

In the Advanced tab link bar, use the Related Web Offers, Related Web Surveys, Related Events, and Related URLs links to add each offer element to the appropriate offer. After you add an element to the list, it is available as a personalization element in the appropriate Offer. For example, after you add a Web offer on the Related Web Offers link bar, you can navigate to an Edit view and select Web Offers in the Personalization Category field. Your newly added Web offer appears in the list of elements.

When the Web site visitor clicks a Web survey link on the Offers or Information views, a survey wizard appears that steps the user through a series of questions about the product. You can use Web Surveys to capture customer feedback or qualify leads. Using the Web Survey designer, you can design a survey once, reuse questions and answers across multiple surveys, and deploy the survey on the Web and in the Call Center. The hyperlink takes the customer to a predefined Web survey page.

**NOTE:** Web Surveys are created using Siebel SmartScript. For more information, see *Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide*.

The Related Web Surveys list contains a list of Web surveys related to this campaign that can be included in Web Offer page as URL hyperlinks. Drill down on the survey name in the Related Web Surveys list to display the SmartScript Administration screen's Scripts list where you can select and modify the survey.

The following list contains descriptions of how links to offer elements appear in an offer:

- **Web offer link.** The following is an example of how a link to a Web offer appears in an offer. The hyperlink is the image (banner\_midsize.gif). When you click the link, the Web offer (Introducing Siebel eService, MidMarket Edition) appears.

```
<a href="[*web offer: Introducing Siebel eService MidMarket Edition]"></a>
```

- **Event link.** The following is an example of how a link to an Event appears in an offer. The hyperlink is Click Here. When you click Click Here, the specific Event appears.

```
<a href="[*web offer: Introducing Siebel eService MidMarket Edition]">Click here</a>
```

- **Web survey link.** The following is an example of how a link to a Survey appears in an offer. The hyperlink is the image (customer\_survey.gif). When you click the image, the specific survey appears.

```
<a href="[*web Survey: web Marketing-eService Survey]"></a>
```

- **Related URLs link.** The following is an example of how a link to a related URL appears in an offer. The hyperlink is Click Here. When you click the words Click Here, the specific URL appears, showing any specified data elements.

```
<a href="[*Related URL: Siebel URL]">Click here</a>
```

- **Products link.** The following is an example of how a link to a Product URL appears in an offer. The hyperlink is the image (order\_now.gif). When you click the image, the specific product page appears.

```
<a href="[*Product: Siebel eService, MME]"></a>
```

### ***To associate Web offers, Web surveys, Events, and Related URLs with offers***

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 In the Offers link bar, choose the offer type with which you want to associate an offer element.
- 3 In the selected offers list, drill down on the offer name.
- 4 Click the Advanced view tab for the Web offer or offer element that you want to associate with the selected offer.
- 5 In the selected list, create a new record.

**NOTE:** Related URLs must start with `http://` or the Web server address will be inserted. If you have more than one URL, separate each one with a semicolon and no spaces.

- 6 In the add dialog box, select the Web offer or offer element and click OK.

## Creating a Wireless Offer

Using the Wireless Offers view allows you to create text messages that can be delivered through SMS as part of a campaign. Wireless offers can be sent to any contacts who are associated with the campaign and who also are associated with mobile device addresses.

### **To create a wireless offer**

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 In the Offers list, create a new offer.
- 3 From the Channel drop-down list, choose Wireless Message.
- 4 In the Offers list, complete the remaining fields.  
For more information about creating offers, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#).
- 5 Drill down on the wireless offer name.
- 6 In the Edit Wireless Message view tab, in the Personalization Elements list, verify that the merge fields appear.
- 7 Click Edit Message to add the text of the message.
- 8 You can insert the merge field tag where you want the merge field to be located in the body of the message by performing the following steps:
  - a In the Personalization list, copy (CTRL+C) a merge field tag that you want to insert in the message.
  - b In the Message Contents workspace, paste (CTRL+V) the tag in the message contents box.
- 9 Click Save Message to save the message text.

## Working with Fax Offers

Fax offers are available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Web Marketing. For instructions about how to create a fax offer, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#). For instructions about how to modify a fax offer, see ["Modifying an Offer" on page 54](#).

For information about working with fax offers, see the following topics:

- [About Fax Offers on page 74](#)
- [Associating a Template with a Fax Offer on page 75](#)

### About Fax Offers

Using the Fax Offer view, a marketer can create personalized faxes for targeted distribution during a campaign.

The Fax Offer view contains four view tabs.

- **Offer Details.** This form contains additional fields that you can use to specify a predefined communications Delivery Profile for fax distribution, an Activity check box that may be used to track the offer as an activity and approval check boxes and fields if the fax offer requires approval from your company's marketing and legal departments. The Offer Details form also displays a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field.
- **Edit Fax.** This form allows you to choose an offer template and specify the personalization elements that are included in your fax design.
- **Delivery Profile.** This read-only list displays parameters of the Siebel Communications profile chosen for the fax offer. For more information on setting up a delivery profile for a fax offer, see *Siebel Communications Server Administration Guide*. For information on testing and distributing fax campaigns, see "Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers" on page 116.
- **Literature.** This list shows the company and product information associated with the media offer. You can add additional items to this list if desired. For more information, see "Associating Literature with Offers" on page 79.

## Associating a Template with a Fax Offer

This section describes how to associate a template with a fax offer. To edit the template, see "Creating and Editing Offer Templates" on page 55.

### ***To associate an offer template with a fax offer***

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen > Fax Offers view.
- 2 In the Fax Offers list, select the fax offer, and click the Edit Fax view tab.
- 3 In the Edit Fax form, create a new record.
- 4 Click the Template Name select button.
- 5 In the Pick Offer Template dialog box, select the predefined template for the fax offer and click OK.

Only offer templates that you add to the Offer Templates list will be available for selection. For details, see "Creating and Editing Offer Templates" on page 55.

- 6 Save the record.

The template contents appear on the right side of the view, and Edit Template and Verify & Preview buttons are available.

## Using Delivery Profiles for Fax Offers

Delivery Profiles are available in Siebel Marketing. They are required for fax offers. Delivery Profiles are created using the Communication Administration screen's Communications Drivers and Profiles view. Fax offers are distributed using the fax communications driver provided with your fax application.

Siebel Communications Server does not interface directly with fax servers. Most popular fax servers provide email system gateways that connect themselves to an email system such as Microsoft Exchange Server or an SMTP server. The host email system recognizes messages with specially formatted email addresses and directs those messages to the fax server.

Siebel Communications Server interfaces indirectly with this type of fax server through the host email system. Except for the email address format, it makes no difference to Siebel Communications Server whether it is sending an email or a fax. Before fax offers can be sent out, you must select one of the defined profiles.

Default parameter values are set for each communications driver within the Communication Administration screen's Communications Drivers and Profiles view. You can create customized communications profiles for each of these driver types that override the default values for that driver. For example, a profile might specify customized From and Reply-To email addresses.

For more information about communications drivers and profiles, see *Siebel Communications Server Administration Guide*.

For information about using delivery profiles, see the following topics:

- [Creating a Delivery Profile for Fax Offers on page 76](#)
- [Associating a Delivery Profile with Fax Offers on page 77](#)

## Creating a Delivery Profile for Fax Offers

Use this section to select a communications driver and create a profile for fax offers.

### ***To create a delivery profile for fax offers***

- 1** Navigate to the Communications Administration - Communications Drivers and Profiles view.
- 2** In the Communications Drivers list, select a driver, and click the Profiles view tab.
- 3** In the Profiles list, create a new record.
  - a** In the Name field, type a name for the new profile.
  - b** In the Organization field, accept the default organization, or click the select button and select another organization.
  - c** In the Responsibilities field, click the select button, and in the Responsibilities list, select the responsibility associated with profile access.

The Responsibilities field is used in conjunction with Siebel eMail Response. It does not apply to outbound email campaigns.

- 4** Save the profile, and click the Driver Parameters view tab.
- 5** Edit the parameters for the profile, and save the record.

## Associating a Delivery Profile with Fax Offers

Use the following procedure to associate a delivery profile with fax offers.

### *To associate a delivery profile with a fax offer*

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 From the Offers link bar, select Fax Offer.
- 3 In the Offer Details form, select the offer record.
- 4 In the Delivery Profile field, select the delivery profile for the offer.

## Working with Phone Offers

Phone offers are available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns. For instructions about how to create a phone offer, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#). For instructions about how to modify a phone offer, see ["Modifying an Offer" on page 54](#).

For information about working with phone offers, see the following topics:

- [About Phone Offers on page 77](#)
- [Creating Call Guides for Phone Offers on page 78](#)

## About Phone Offers

The Phone Offers view allows you to define telemarketing offers that will be executed using Siebel Call Center or another application.

The Phone Offers view consists of four view tabs.

- **Offer Details.** This form contains more fields that you can use if the phone offer requires approvals from your company's marketing and legal departments. It also provides a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field.
- **Literature.** This list shows the company and product information associated with the phone offer. You can add additional items to this list if desired. For more information, see ["Associating Literature with Offers" on page 79](#).
- **Call Guide.** This text form allows you to add information about your offer. The Call Guide note field is visible to call center agents as they launch campaigns.
- **Advanced.** This form associates an Offer Group with the phone offer.

## Creating Call Guides for Phone Offers

A call guide is a read-only note field visible to call center agents as they launch campaigns. The information in the Call Guide field is useful to agents as they prepare for inbound and outbound telephone calls and when they talk to clients. You create the call guide in the Offers screen.

The Call Guide field is intended to display more detailed information about the campaign, answer common questions, and provide offer options. The following example shows what a Call Guide field might contain:

**Call Guide example.** Through the end of December, we are offering a special bonus to our current customers upgrading a Basic service agreement to Premium. For \$149, we will upgrade your service package as well as provide a coupon book worth \$1,000 toward the purchase of our Signature brand of products.

If the customer agrees, the call center agent can click the Script button and start the call script.

**NOTE:** A call script is written using Siebel SmartScript. You associate a script with a campaign. For more information, see ["Using SmartScripts with a Campaign" on page 97](#). For information about creating SmartScripts, see *Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide*.

### To create a call guide

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, select a campaign.
- 3 Drill down on the campaign name.
- 4 Click the Design view tab.
- 5 In the Call Guide text field, type the information you wish to use for the offer.

## About Direct Mail Offers

Direct mail offers are available in the Siebel Marketing application. For instructions about how to create a direct mail offer, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#). For instructions about how to modify a direct mail offer, see ["Modifying an Offer" on page 54](#).

Using the Direct Mail Offer view, you can associate Literature documents with an Offer. Siebel Marketing does not provide a mechanism to print direct mail offers, but can pass output lists to vendors for execution.

You can generate output or distribution list of contacts during the campaign launch. The customer information is arranged according to a predefined list format, and the list can be delivered to the appropriate vendors through a predefined method (for example, FTP or email). For more information about list output and vendors, see ["About Previewing and Generating Lists" on page 129](#).

The Direct Mail Offer contains the Offer Details and Literature view tabs.

- **Offer Details.** This form contains additional fields that you can use if the Direct Mail Offer requires approvals from your company's marketing and legal departments. It also provides a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field.

- **Literature.** This list shows the company and product information associated with the offer. To add literature to the list, see ["Associating Literature with Offers" on page 79](#).

## About Media Offers

Media offers are available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns. For instructions about how to create a media offer, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#). For instructions about how to modify a media offer, see ["Modifying an Offer" on page 54](#).

The Media Offers view allows you to define indirect offers. Types of media offers available in the standard product are Billboard, Print Ad, Press Release, Radio, TV, Seminar, and Trade Show. When you define indirect offers, you know the general characteristics of your audience but not its exact composition.

The Media Offers view contains the Offer Details, Literature and Related Events view tabs.

- **Offer Details.** This form contains additional fields that you can use if the media offer requires approvals from your company's marketing and legal departments. It also provides a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field. You can specify the type of media you will use to distribute the offer using the Type field.
- **Literature.** This shows the company and product information associated with the media offer. You can add additional items to this list if desired. For example, if the media offer type is press release, you can associate the press release content with the offer for later referral. For more information, see ["Associating Literature with Offers" on page 79](#).
- **Related Events.** This indicates if the media offer is being used to promote a specific event or set of events.

## Associating Literature with Offers

Literature about the products or services offered during a campaign can be associated with an offer using the Literature view tab in the Direct Mail, Media, Phone, and Fax Offer views. To add attachments to email offers, see ["Adding Attachments to Email Offers" on page 67](#).

You can associate literature items, such as white papers, presentations, brochures, advertising material, and product specifications with your offer to create a specialized library of information. You can use this library when reviewing details of offers that are being reused in current campaigns.

In addition, a call center agent can view the literature while launching the campaign. The agent can also include literature items with faxes, email messages, or correspondence sent to a contact. Literature items are automatically included when you create a new correspondence record for a contact.

Before you can select literature to associate with an offer, you must add the literature items to the Literature screen's All Literature Across Organizations list. For more information about adding literature that you can associate with your offers, see the chapter about literature in *Applications Administration Guide*.

Use the following procedure to associate specific literature items with your offers.

**To associate a literature item with an offer**

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen.
- 2 From the Offers link bar, select the appropriate offer type.
- 3 Drill down on the offer name.
- 4 In the Literature list, create a new record.
- 5 In the Literature form, click the Name select button.
- 6 In the Pick Literature Item dialog box, select the literature, and click OK.

## Working with Web Offers

Web offers are available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Web Marketing. The Web Offers view allows you to create offers that can be used on your company’s Web pages. For instructions about how to create a Web offer, see [“Creating an Offer” on page 52](#). To modify a Web offer, see [“Modifying an Offer” on page 54](#).

### About Web Offers

Using the Web Offers view tabs, you can specify a template containing content for the Web Offer, edit the template and add personalization elements, identify links to related Web offers, surveys, related events and related URLs and attach relevant product information that can be downloaded by the Web site visitor.

The Web Offers view includes the following view tabs:

- **Offer Details.** This form contains additional fields that you can use if the Web Offer requires approvals from your company’s marketing and legal departments. It also provides a unique identifier for the offer in the Offer Code field.
 

**NOTE:** If you select the Inbound Active Flag check box, the Web Offer appears to eligible users in the Web Marketing home page. The Featured Offers applet checks this flag before displaying a Web offer to an eligible contact or prospect.
- **Edit Web Offer.** This form allows you to attach templates containing the content of the Web offer. To be selected here, templates must first be added to the Offer Templates list. For details, see [“Creating and Editing Offer Templates” on page 55](#).
  - The Edit Templates button allows you to edit the template content, as well select personalization categories, and copy and paste category elements into the template.
  - The Verify & Preview button verifies the template edits and displays the finished Web offer as it will appear on the Web page.
- **Downloads.** This list allows you to provide a list of literature related to the offer that is available for download by the Web site visitor.

- **Advanced.** Contains the Related Web Surveys, Related Events, and Related URLs link bars. These lists allow you to specify Web surveys, related events, and related URLs that you can embed in your Web offer, using the Edit Web Offer personalization elements controls. For information, see ["Associating Web Offers, Web Surveys, Events, and URLs with Offers"](#) on page 72.

The following sections detail how to create a basic Web offer:

- [Associating a Template with a Web Offer on page 81](#)
- [Adding Attachments to Web Offers Downloads List on page 81](#)

## Associating a Template with a Web Offer

This section describes how to associate a template with a Web offer. To edit the offer template, see ["Creating and Editing Offer Templates"](#) on page 55. Templates must first be added to the Offer Templates list to be available for selection in the Edit Web Offer view tab. For details, see ["Creating and Editing Offer Templates"](#) on page 55.

### ***To associate an offer template with an email offer***

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen > Web Offers view.
- 2 In the Web Offers list, select the offer and click the Edit Web Offer view tab.
- 3 Create a new record.
- 4 Click the Template Name select button.
- 5 In the Pick Offer Template dialog box, select the template and click OK.

To be available for selection, templates must first be added to the Offer Templates list. For details, see ["Creating an Offer Template and Adding it to the Template List"](#) on page 56.

- 6 Save the record to associate the template with the offer.

## Adding Attachments to Web Offers Downloads List

The Web Offer Downloads list displays literature and other files that can be downloaded in conjunction with the offer. Literature items must be included in the literature list to be available for selection in this view.

The Downloads list shows files that can be included in the selected Web offer for download. Any literature other than offer templates can be included in an offer as a download.

The fields in this view are shown in [Table 14](#).

Table 14. Fields in the Web Offer Downloads View

Field	Comment
Comments	Automatically populated from the literature table.
Description	Automatically populated from the literature table.
File Name	Automatically populated from the literature table.
File Type	Automatically populated with the file extension.
Modified	Automatically populated with the file modification date.
Name	Click the Name select button to select a literature item.
Release Date	Automatically populated with the date that the literature item was released.
Size (In Bytes)	Automatically populated with the file size in kilobytes.

Files added here are not automatically available for downloading. In this view, you select a set of files that you want to be able to include as downloads from your Web offer. These files then appear in the Personalization Elements list of embeddable objects in the Edit Web Offer form when you select the Downloads category from the Personalization Categories list.

You can select any file from that list and copy it into the template file and that file will be available for downloading. These files are displayed in the Embedded Object list as [Download:Literature Item Name].

When the Siebel Marketing software encodes this tag, it uses the Literature Item Name as the hyperlink text. The marketer can override this default behavior by using the wildcard (\*) functionality and manually defining the HREF link, as described in ["Using Hyperlinks \(HREF\) in an Offer Template" on page 57](#).

**To attach literature in the Downloads view**

- 1** Navigate to the Offers screen > Web Offers view.
- 2** In the Web Offers list, select the offer, and click the Downloads view tab.
- 3** In the Downloads list, select the literature you want to make available for downloading from the Web offer.
  - a** Click the menu button and create a new record.
  - b** In the Downloads form, click the Name select button.
  - c** In the Pick Literature Item list, select the item, and click OK.

## Previewing Offers

You can preview what an offer will look like when received by a contact or prospect in the following ways:

- **Click Verify & Preview in the appropriate Edit Template view.** Clicking this button tests the behavior of conditional content to various merge field values. For more information, see the section in this chapter that applies to the template you are using.
- **Use the Test Offer feature.** This feature is one way to confirming configurations for email, fax, and wireless offers. For example, when you use this feature to test email offers you confirm configurations such as Email Marketing Server configuration and proper template setup for use in multipart MIME. For more information, see ["Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers" on page 116](#).



# 6

## Planning and Designing Marketing Campaigns

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About Siebel Marketing Campaigns on page 85](#)
- [Program and Campaign Planning Tools on page 86](#)
- [Creating Campaigns on page 91](#)
- [Working with Campaign Teams and Groups on page 98](#)
- [Setting Up Campaign Execution Options on page 100](#)
- [Setting Up Campaign Quotas on page 107](#)
- [Setting Up Campaign Assignment Skills on page 111](#)
- [Using Siebel Marketing with Siebel Events Management on page 114](#)
- [About Testing Campaign Offers on page 115](#)
- [Using Response Management on page 116](#)
- [Using Campaign Explorer on page 124](#)
- [Loading Customers in Campaigns on page 125](#)

### About Siebel Marketing Campaigns

The Siebel Campaigns module is available to users with a license for Siebel Marketing or Siebel Campaigns.

A campaign is the initiative in which you convey a marketing message to one or more groups of people. Typically, campaigns deliver a promotional offer to retain current customers or to acquire new customers across channels of communication. For example, you might launch a phone campaign that invites contacts to sign up for a special promotion or deliver a direct mail campaign that provides a sample of a new product and a coupon offer to existing customers.

The goal of a marketing campaign is to create an opportunity that ultimately results in a sale, brand recognition, or some other type of response. Marketers use both direct and indirect campaigns to achieve these objectives.

- Direct campaigns target individuals using multichannel approaches such as email and telephone. Contacts for the campaign are derived by applying segmentation criteria against a database of customer information and generating a list or by purchasing or renting a list of prospects. Multiple campaigns can use the same segment criteria.

- Indirect campaigns target indeterminate groups of people whose general characteristics you may know, but whose exact composition you do not know. Examples of indirect campaigns are those that use television, radio, print ads, or other forms of media for delivery of the message. An indirect campaign is associated with a marketing program's stage rather than with a specific segment or list.

## About the Siebel Campaigns Module

The Siebel Campaigns module is used by Siebel eBusiness Applications such as Call Center and Sales. The campaigns are the same as the campaigns that result from a campaign in the marketing application. Campaigns contain contacts and prospects, offers, activities, and other campaign execution elements.

Using Siebel Campaigns you can distribute your company's offer using television, radio, billboards, direct mail, fax, email, the Web, wireless, and phone.

The campaign creation process begins with an administrator, who creates the offers and associates the offers with a campaign. The administrator then adds the literature, contacts and prospects, call summary, and call guide. The administrator also determines which script, if any, is associated with the campaign and who is on the campaign team. A campaign manager might associate quotas and incentive awards with the campaign to track progress and reward performance.

The administrator can monitor the status of campaigns using the Campaign Explorer view to see the Contacts, Activities, Offers, and Literature for each campaign, and by using Campaign and Response Charts.

## Program and Campaign Planning Tools

Siebel Marketing's program and campaign organizational tools allow management of activities, milestones, documentation and schedules for your marketing campaigns.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [Creating and Using Activity Plans on page 87](#). Siebel Marketing's activity plans can help you plan and execute the marketing program's activities and milestones.
- [Using Timelines on page 89](#). Program, campaign, and campaign charts provide an at-a-glance weekly and monthly overview of planned, active, and completed programs and campaigns.
- [Associating Documents with Programs and Campaigns on page 90](#). The Documents view in the Programs screen allows you to create a library of proposals, white papers, artwork, and other files associated with the marketing program.

## Creating and Using Activity Plans

Siebel Marketing's Activity Plans views allow you to associate predefined planning and milestone activities and tasks with a template (activity plan). Then, you can assign the templates to your marketing programs and campaigns. This assignment creates one or more activities that are associated with a campaign or a program.

**NOTE:** Activities are not created for contacts loaded into a campaign.

Activity Plans may be designed to help you plan the marketing program or campaign, or launch it. Before you link an activity plan to your campaign, you need to create activity templates or customize existing templates to reflect your business process and needs. Templates allow you to define a generic set of activities that may be reused.

For example, a marketing department production manager might design an activity plan template called Direct Mail that contains regularly scheduled campaign activities such as meetings with creative or budgetary staff and start tasks. Using the Campaign Activity Plans view the manager can associate the activity plan template to the current campaign and then assign resources, define priorities and status and so on to each predefined task, adding comments where necessary.

The activity plan record is flagged to indicate how the activity plan will be used. If the activity is designated as a planning task, none of its activities are copied to the campaign record when it is created. If the activity plan is designed for the execution of the program or campaign, select the Recurring check box, and the set of activities will be automatically recreated and associated with each occurrence.

If your marketing program or campaign has a mixture of planning and start activities, create two plans, one for planning and one for execution tasks, and assign them both to the program or campaign.

### Creating Activity Templates

Activity Plan Templates allow you to create and manage activities for programs and campaigns. You define templates using the Application Administration screen's Activity Templates and Activity Template Details views.

A campaign's activity plan template might include information on the type of activity, duration and status, a list of activities associated with the program or campaign (preparation, telephone calls, milestones, tasks), and so on.

#### ***To create an activity plan template***

- 1** Navigate to the Administration - Data screen > Activity Templates view.
- 2** In the Activity Plan Templates list, create a new record.
- 3** In the Template form, complete the fields and save the record.
  - a** Type a name for the template.
  - b** In the Type drop-down list, choose Program Container for a marketing program template, and Campaign as an activity template for campaigns.
  - c** Type a template description.

- d** In the Auto Trigger field, select the check box if the activity should be associated with the occurrence level.
- e** Select the Public check box if the activity plan may be used by others not on your team.

### **To create activities for the template**

- 1** Navigate to the Administration - Data screen > Activity Templates view.
- 2** In the Activity Plan Templates list, select a template.
- 3** Click the Activity Template Details view tab.
- 4** In the Activity Template Details list, create a new record.
- 5** Complete the necessary fields for each activity assigned to the template.
- 6** From the Type drop-down list, choose an activity type.  
**NOTE:** Repeat Step 2 through Step 6 to add activities to the template.
- 7** Save the activity.

## **Associating Activity Plans with Programs and Campaigns**

Use the Campaigns or Programs screen's Activity Plans view to associate a template containing predefined activities with a program or campaign. An Activity Plan Template's type must be set to Program Container for marketing programs and Campaign for marketing campaigns to be available for selection.

The Activity Plans view consists of the following elements:

- The Campaign or Program form, which provides details of the selected campaign or program.
- The Templates list, which can contain one or many activity plan templates.
- The Activities list, which displays activities associated with the selected template.

### **To associate an activity plan and activities with a campaign or program**

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns or Programs screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns or Programs list, drill down on the campaign name or program name.
- 3** Click the Plan view tab.
- 4** In the Plan link bar, click Activity Plans.
- 5** In the Activity Plans list, create a new record.  
In the new row, the Recurring field contains a check mark.
- 6** Complete the necessary fields.
  - a** From the Template drop-down list, select a predefined template.
  - b** Edit the existing description if desired, or type a description of the plan.

- c Select Suppress Calendar to populate the check box if you do not want these activities added to your calendar view.
- d Clear Recurring if the activity should be not be written to the campaign record for every occurrence of the campaign or program.

When you clear the Recurring check box, you indicate that this set of planning tasks is only performed once across all occurrences. By default, each new activity plan is set to Recurring when you assign it to a campaign or activity.

A list of all activities appear in the Activities list. Note that the dates are populated by using the Lead Time column relative to the time that the activity template was associated.

- 7 To change the times or dates of any of the activities, click the Schedule view tab for the campaign
- 8 In the Schedule link bar, click Activity List.

## Using Timelines

Timelines are available for programs, campaigns, event plans, and events. Timelines provide calendar views of scheduled, active, and completed marketing tactics in a Gantt chart format. The chart is divided into weeks and months. Start field and End field values determine the placement of the timeline bars.

### Types of Timelines

Timeline types appear in the link bar of the Marketing Calendar screen.

- **Tactics timeline.** This timeline shows all planned, active, and completed marketing tactics including programs, campaigns, event plans, and events. You can drill on the name of any tactic displayed in one of the timelines to be navigated to the details for that tactic. The drill down will take you to the appropriate screen (program, campaign, event plan, or event) according to the tactic type.
- **The Programs timeline.** This timeline chart shows planned, active, and completed programs. You can double-click on the folder icon next to a program in the chart to see the child campaigns and related events.
- **The Campaigns timeline.** This timeline shows planned, active, and completed campaigns.
- **Events timeline.** This timeline chart shows all planned, active, and completed event plans and events.

### Viewing Timelines

Timelines help you determine that scheduling is appropriate and on track for planned marketing efforts.

#### ***To view timelines***

- 1 Navigate to the Marketing Calendar screen.

- 2 In the Marketing Calendar link bar, click a timelines type.

For a description of types of timelines, see “Types of Timelines” on page 89.

## Understanding Color-Coded Status Bars

Timeline bars are color-coded to help you identify the status of programs and campaigns. You can place the cursor over a timeline bar to display more details.

Programs and campaigns timelines use the following status colors:

- Active: Green
- Planned: Yellow
- Scheduled: Orange
- Completed: Blue
- Cancelled: Red

**NOTE:** Sometimes status (programs and campaigns) timelines use this status color.

## Associating Documents with Programs and Campaigns

Most marketing teams generate documents such as proposals, white papers, press releases, and artwork used in advertising. These documents can be attached to programs and campaigns for future reference.

### ***To attach documents to programs and campaigns***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns or Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs or Campaigns list, drill down on a program or campaign.
- 3 In the Plan link bar, click Documents.
- 4 Click the Attachments view tab.
- 5 To add a URL, in the Attachments list, perform the following steps:
  - a Click New URL.
  - b In the URL field, type the URL, and click Add.
- 6 To attach a file, in the Attachments list, perform the following steps:
  - a Click New File.
  - b In the Choose File dialog box, select the file, and click Open.
- 7 In the Comments field, add information that identifies the file’s contents.
- 8 Select the Update File check box to set this preference, if you want changes to the original file to be included in the attached file.

**To access the attached document**

- In the Documents list, drill down on the Attachment Name to view document details.

## Creating Campaigns

This section contains the following topics:

- [Requirements for Creating and Modifying Campaigns on page 91](#)
- [Creating a Campaign on page 92](#)
- [Associating Campaign Elements with a Campaign on page 95](#)
- [Associating Offers with a Campaign on page 96](#)
- [Using SmartScripts with a Campaign on page 97](#)

## Requirements for Creating and Modifying Campaigns

You use campaigns in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns. Prior to launching a campaign, you need to perform some or all of the following tasks:

- **Create segments or lists.** Create segments using the marketing segmentation module. For details, see ["Importing and Managing External Lists" on page 147](#) and ["Creating and Managing Internal Lists" on page 159](#).
- **Associate segments and lists with a campaign.** ["Associating a List of Prospects or Contacts with a Campaign" on page 125](#).
- **Select the contacts and prospects.** Add the names of contacts and prospects you will be targeting with the campaign. Add contacts and prospects manually if desired. If you use segments or lists, you must load the campaign. Manually adding names occurs when a sales organization is collecting very specific customers to target with an offer. For details, see ["Adding Contacts and Prospects to a Campaign Individually" on page 126](#).
- **Determine campaign activities and milestones.** Create activity plans with associated activities for your campaigns. For details, see the chapter about activities in *Applications Administration Guide*.
- **Set up campaign groups and teams.** Specify group or team members to launch the campaign. For details, see ["Working with Campaign Teams and Groups" on page 98](#).
- **Establish employee skills.** Determine what employee skills are needed to launch the campaign. ["Setting Up Campaign Assignment Skills" on page 111](#).
- **Develop quotas.** Set up quota plans for campaign team members to meet and determine incentives or rewards for those who meet their quotas. For details, see ["Setting Up Campaign Quotas" on page 107](#).
- **Define the Segments.** For more information, see ["Marketing Segments and Segment Trees" on page 35](#).

- **Associate vendors and export list formats.** For more information, see [“About Previewing and Generating Lists” on page 129.](#)
- **Set up campaign execution options.** For more information, see [“Using Assignment Manager with Campaign Contacts” on page 106.](#)
- **Define the offers.** Create the offer that your customers will receive, and associate the offers with campaigns. For details, see [Chapter 5, “Creating and Using Offers.”](#)
- **Create a SmartScript.** This SmartScript will guide agents through a campaign call. For details, see [“Using SmartScripts with a Campaign” on page 97.](#)
- **Prepare literature items.** Prepare any literature items associated with the campaign. For details, see the chapter about literature in *Applications Administration Guide*.

## Creating a Campaign

Use this procedure to create a campaign in the Campaigns screen.

### To create a new campaign

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, add a new record.
- 3 In the Campaigns form, complete the fields.

Some fields are described in [Table 15 on page 92](#). To view all fields in the Campaigns form, click the Show more button.

- 4 Complete the necessary fields for the campaign record, using [Table 15](#) as a guide.

Table 15. Frequently Used Fields for a Campaign Record

Field	Comments
Approval Status	If the value is Revised, the campaign is still being revised.
Assigned Budget	The amount of money approved to spend for the campaign.
Budget Request	If the campaign has been submitted as part of a Budget Request, the Budget Request ID appears.
Campaign Code	Automatically added. You can type a source code for the campaign, or use the default record ID for the code.  The source code for this campaign is available for use as part of the source code format for the program. The value must be unique.
Division	The internal division responsible for the campaign.

Table 15. Frequently Used Fields for a Campaign Record

Field	Comments
DNIS	<p>The telephone number associated with the campaign. This number must be set up separately in Siebel CTI (Computer Telephony Integration). The DNIS field for a campaign is used in CTI to query for this campaign and drive a screen pop to this campaign. See <i>Siebel Communications Server Administration Guide</i> for more information.</p> <p>Type only numerals in this field. Do not use hyphens, spaces, parentheses, periods, or any characters other than numbers.</p>
Execution Period	The predefined time period during which the campaign will be active.
Language	The language in which the call script and offer was created. If no language is specified, the selected SmartScript runs in the default language for the application. If the script does not have a translation for the language selected, you will get an error when trying to run the script.
Lead Partner	<p>If a lead partner was assigned at the program level and the campaign associated with that program does not have a lead partner, the campaign inherits the lead partner from the program. The choice of Lead Partner is limited to the organizations associated with the campaign.</p> <p>You can change the value, selecting from any of the partners associated with a campaign or campaign. This lead partner will be copied to any campaigns created from this campaign and to responses or opportunities that result from this campaign.</p>
Name	<p>The name of the campaign.</p> <p>You can have two campaigns with the same name but the campaign code for each campaign must be unique.</p>
Organization	<p>The predefined organization that is responsible for the campaign. You can choose more than one organization.</p> <p>You can also associate Partner Organizations with the campaign. Partner organizations are created and administered through Partner Administration. For more information, see <i>Siebel Partner Relationship Management Administration Guide</i>.</p>
Planned Start/ Planned End	<p>The planned start date defaults to the date you created the campaign. The planned end date defaults to 30 days later.</p> <p>These dates do not affect launching campaigns. A campaign will launch even if the planned end date has passed.</p>
Priority	The priority level for the campaign. This value can be used to refine contact frequency rules in segmentation criteria. For example, to exclude customers that have been targeted by a Priority 1 campaign in the last 30 days.

Table 15. Frequently Used Fields for a Campaign Record

Field	Comments
Product Lines	You can associate product lines to the campaign to help categorize the campaigns in the system.
Products	You can associate products to the campaign to help categorize the campaigns in the system.
Program	This field is automatically completed when the campaign is associated with a specific marketing program.
Purpose	In the Plan view tab. The purpose of a campaign—for example, “To cross sell products to existing customers.”
Region	Choose from the list the region in which the campaign will be active.
SmartScript	<p>Select a call script, if needed, to guide the agent’s interaction with the customer. To appear in the list, scripts must be set up in advance using Siebel SmartScript. For instructions, see <i>Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide</i>.</p> <p>The call script starts when an agent clicks the Script button in the Campaign Contacts or Prospects view.</p> <p>You can use the Call Guide as an alternative to a SmartScript call script.</p> <p>If more than one script is associated with a campaign, the script flagged as <i>primary</i> runs when the agent clicks the Script button.</p>
Stage	This field is automatically populated with stage information when the campaign is associated with a specific program’s stage.
Status	<p>By default, campaign status is Planned (start and end dates in the future). Status values may be changed at any time. During automatic program execution, the status automatically changes to active when a campaign is loaded. At the conclusion of the program, the campaign’s status automatically changes to completed. If the program is executed manually, status does not automatically change.</p> <p>To change the status, use the status drop-down list to choose Active (start date in the past and end date in future) or Completed (start and end date in the past).</p>
Type	Choose from the list the type of campaign you are creating. Options include Acquire, Retain, Win-Back, Cross-Sell, and Up-Sell.

## Associating Campaign Elements with a Campaign

Table 16 contains descriptions of many elements in the Campaign view tabs that can be associated with a campaign.

Table 16. Campaign Elements That Can Be Associated with a Campaign

Plan and Design Element	Location and Description
Activity List	In the Schedule link bar. Team members can create and assign activities related to the campaign.
Activity Plans	In the Plan link bar. Templates of activities can be associated with a campaign. For more information, see <a href="#">"Creating and Using Activity Plans" on page 87</a> .
Documents	In the Plan link bar. Any team member can associate documents as attachments to the campaign.
Execution Options	In the Design link bar. The campaign execution options specify the default values for these settings each time the campaign is loaded.
Expenses	In the Plan link bar. Each campaign can have a forecast that predicts the financial performance of the plan. The actual results versus the forecast can be tracked for each campaign.
Lead Partner	Field in the Campaign Details form view. Anytime a Campaign Plan is loaded, the Lead Partner is automatically added to the associated campaign. The lead partner must be one of the organizations associated with the campaign.
Offers	In the Design link bar. Each time the campaign is loaded or launched the associated offers will be copied to the campaign. For details, see <a href="#">"Associating Offers with a Campaign" on page 96</a> .
Organizations	Field in the Campaign Details form view. These are the organizations that will have visibility to the Campaign under All Campaigns. When the campaign is loaded, each organization is automatically included on the associated Campaign.
Related Events	In the Design link bar. After you launch a campaign that has an associated related event, all campaign contacts are added to the campaign as invited attendees. For details, see <a href="#">"Associating Related Events with a Campaign" on page 96</a> .
Team Members	Field in the Campaign Details form view. These are the employee positions that have visibility to the campaign under the My Campaigns option. When the campaign is loaded, each team member is automatically included on the associated campaign.

## Associating Offers with a Campaign

Before you implement a marketing program, you should associate one or more offers with the campaign, depending on your marketing strategy. The Offers list provides information about each offer, including the name and description, the offer type, and the source code assigned to this particular offer, and any associated product and price list.

When the campaign is loaded, a campaign record is created, and valid offers are copied to the campaign. Any views showing the offers for each campaign have built-in visibility to prevent invalid offers from appearing to end users. A valid offer is defined as an offer with a current date that falls between its defined activation and expiration dates. If activation and expiration dates are not defined for the offer, the offer is valid by default. Each time the campaign is loaded and when it is launched campaign offers are copied to the wave history.

**NOTE:** If you plan to change offers during the campaign (after launching one or more waves), you should not disassociate the previous offer. Instead you should mark the previous offer as expired (using the expiration date), and associate the new active offer. This method allows you to continue to capture and report on responses from the previous version of the offer.

### ***To associate offers with a campaign***

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design view tab.
- 4 In the Offers list, create a new record.
- 5 In the Add Offer dialog box, select a predefined offer, and click OK.

## Associating Related Events with a Campaign

Events can be associated with a campaign so that you can invite contacts and prospects to an event. For more information about related events, see ["Using Siebel Marketing with Siebel Events Management" on page 114](#).

### ***To associate events with a campaign***

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design view tab.
- 4 In the Offers link bar, click Related Events.

- 5 Create a new record, and click the Name select button.
- 6 In the Pick Event dialog box, select a predefined event, and click OK.

## Using SmartScripts with a Campaign

A *SmartScript* is a script that the salesperson or call center agent uses to interact with the customer. It can be associated with any campaign.

If a SmartScript is associated with a business component and will be run for a campaign, then that business component's name must be the same as the value in the Response Type field for the campaign. For example, if the Response Type field is set to Response, then the script's business component must be Response. If the Response Type field is set to Opportunity, then the script's business component must be Opportunity.

### To set up a SmartScript

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 Select a campaign.
- 3 In the SmartScript field, click the select button.  
The Smart Scripts dialog box appears.
- 4 Select the script from the list of available scripts, and click Add.  
**NOTE:** Repeat Step 3 through Step 4 to add all the scripts that will be used in this campaign.
- 5 In the SmartScript dialog box, select the check box of the primary script, and click OK.

## Creating and Applying Campaign Templates

You can save any campaign as a reusable campaign template. The template retains many of the planning details from the campaign such as the goals, expenses, offers, documents, segments/lists, and activity plans. After you create a campaign template, you can reapply the template to any new campaigns. You can also share the template with other employees in your organization.

### To save a campaign as a campaign template

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign that you want to use as a template.
- 3 In the Campaign form, click the menu button, and select Save as Template.

This menu option is active only if your administrator has given you permission to use this action (using the Marketing access groups).

- 4 In the Save As Template dialog box, type a name, and click OK.
- 5 To make changes to the new template, navigate to the Marketing Templates screen > Campaign Templates view.
- 6 Query for the template you created in [Step 4](#).
- 7 In the template list or form, make the necessary changes.

### ***To apply a campaign template to a campaign***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, create a new campaign, or drill down on the campaign name to which you want to apply the template.
- 3 In the Campaign form, click the menu button, and choose Apply Template.
- 4 In the Apply Template dialog box, select the template you want to apply, and click OK.
- 5 When asked if you want to continue, click OK.  
The Message dialog box, appears, confirming that the template was applied.
- 6 In the Message dialog box, click OK.

## **Working with Campaign Teams and Groups**

Many organizations assign groups of agents to particular campaigns based on skill or territory.

The most straightforward way to provide access to the campaign is by assigning positions to a team. However, if you have a large call center where agents are organized by predefined groups of agents, you can set up assignments once and then assign the group to each campaign. Setting up campaign groups lets you add the key positions to a campaign group, without having to remember individual employees.

Some call centers do not have predefined groups, or the groups change often. In this case you can assign positions directly to the campaign team. Every employee position in the team has access to the campaign. To work with campaign teams and groups, perform the following tasks:

- [Assigning a Team to a Campaign on page 98](#). Used by Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns.
- [Setting Up Campaign Groups on page 99](#). Used by Siebel Campaigns.
- [Associating Groups with Campaigns on page 100](#). Used by Siebel Campaigns.

### **Assigning a Team to a Campaign**

Campaign teams are used by Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns. Campaign teams are set up by assigning individual employees to a team that is associated with the campaign. Each employee position on the campaign team has access to the campaign in the Campaigns screen.

If you are working with partners in developing the Campaign, you can also include a partner as a team member by adding that partner's position. The partner might then view the campaign in the Partner Portal, in the Campaign Management screen.

### ***To assign a team to a campaign***

**1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:

- In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.

**2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.

**3** In the Team field, click the select button.

The creator of the campaign is automatically assigned as the primary member of the Campaign Team. This position may be removed from the team only after you select a different member of the team to be the Primary.

**4** In the Team Members dialog box, select employees from the Available list and click Add.

To select multiple consecutive employees, hold down SHIFT as you select each name. To select multiple nonconsecutive employees, hold down CTRL as you select names.

**5** Click the Primary field to select the primary team member, and click OK.

The default primary team member is the position that created the campaign.

## **Setting Up Campaign Groups**

Campaign groups are positions within your company, not individual employees. After you add a group to a campaign, anyone occupying a position listed in the group has access to the campaign. Campaign groups are used by Siebel Campaigns and can be associated with a campaign in Siebel Marketing.

### ***To create a campaign group and add group members***

**1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:

- In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.

**2** In the Campaigns link bar, click Campaigns Groups.

**3** In the Campaign Groups list, add a new record.

**4** Type a name and description for the group.

**5** In the Campaign Groups list, select the group.

**6** In the Positions list, add a new record.

**7** In the Add Positions dialog box, select the positions for the group and click OK.

## Associating Groups with Campaigns

After you have created the campaign group, you can associate the group with your campaign. Campaign groups are used by Siebel Campaigns.

### **To add a group to a campaign**

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns link bar, click Campaigns Groups.
- 3** In the Groups list, create a new record.
- 4** Type a name and description for the group.
- 5** In the Campaigns link bar, click Campaigns List.
- 6** Select the campaign.
- 7** In the Group field, click the select view button.
- 8** In the Add Groups dialog box, select the group from the available list, and click Add.
- 9** Click OK.

## Setting Up Campaign Execution Options

Campaign execution options are available in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns. Campaign execution options allow you to specify campaign contact ownership and control the user's ability to edit campaign contacts and prospects. You specify the ownership type and complete the default owners (organization and position). In addition, you can apply assignment rule groups (optional) that will allow automatic owner assignment.

Campaign contact ownership is a feature that allows you to control team members visibility into the campaign contacts. Team members accessing the campaign contacts view will only be able to see those campaign contacts and prospects that they own.

You create these assignment rules in the Assignment Rules view in the Assignment Administration screen. For more information, see *Siebel Assignment Manager Administration Guide*. You select a rule group for a campaign in the Campaigns screen.

To establish execution options and apply Assignment Manager rules to campaign contacts, perform the following tasks:

- [Setting Up Execution Options for a Campaign on page 101](#)
- [Using Assignment Manager with Campaign Contacts on page 106.](#)

## Setting Up Execution Options for a Campaign

You can select the default execution options for each campaign when you set up the campaign. After the campaign is loaded, you can modify the execution options for the associated campaign at any time.

If you want to assign contact ownership, make sure that you select the appropriate Campaign Contact Ownership value, your default owners, the Contact editing flags, and an Assignment Manager rule group.

### ***To set execution options for the campaign***

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design view tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Execution Options or Execution Options - Advanced and complete the fields.

**NOTE:** Some fields exist only in the Execution Options - Advanced link.

Execution options fields are described in the following tables:

- Assignment Options. [Table 17 on page 102](#) contains details about assignment options.
- Collaboration Options. [Table 18 on page 103](#) contains details about collaboration options.
- Delivery Options. [Table 19 on page 105](#) contains details about delivery options.

- Load Options. [Table 20 on page 105](#) contains details about load options.

Table 17. Execution Options - Assignment Option Fields

Field	Action
Assignment Rule Group	Required if you select Yes - Assignment Manager in the Campaign Member Ownership field. Use if you want Assignment Manager to assign the organization owner and position owner to contacts and prospects in the campaign. Select a rule group to apply to contacts in the campaign.
Campaign Member Ownership	Controls assignment of position owner and organization owner during the load process. Values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ No. You do not want to assign ownership. When you select this option, the Organization Owner and Position Owner fields are left empty on the campaign contacts and prospect records.</li> <li>■ Yes - Manually. When you select this option, the load process populates the Default Position Owner and Default Organization Owner to the Campaign History table (S_CAMP_CON) for all the contacts and prospects in the load. After the load process, you can manually assign organization and position owners on the campaign contacts and prospect records.</li> <li>■ Yes - Assignment Manager. You want Assignment Manager to assign ownership based on Assignment Manager rule groups. The load process invokes the Assignment Manager engine at the end of the process to assign the campaign members based on the rules in the selected Assignment Rule Group.</li> </ul>
Default Organization Owner	(Optional) Default value that is automatically populated into the Default Organization Owner field during the load process when assignment is enabled (Yes - Assignment Manager or Yes - Manually).  The list of organizations is restricted to the organizations associated with the campaign. After the value is populated, it might be updated if the assignment engine reassigns names. For more information, see <i>Siebel Assignment Manager Administration Guide</i> .
Default Position Owner	(Optional) Default value that is automatically populated into the Default Position Owner fields during the load process when assignment is enabled (Yes - Assignment Manager or Yes - Manually).  The list of positions is restricted to the Default Organization Owner organizations associated with the campaign. After the value is populated, it might be updated if the assignment engine reassigns names. For more information, see <i>Siebel Assignment Manager Administration Guide</i> .
Lock Campaign Team Assignment	Campaign managers sometimes create assignment rules that assign additional positions to the campaign team. This lock flag excludes this campaign from the rules, so that new team members would not be assigned.

Table 18. Execution Options - Collaboration Options

Field	Action
Enable Contact Editing	Default is on (True). When this option is checked, users on the campaign team or group will have the ability to add an delete contacts from the campaign list.
Enable Contact Editing	<p>Default is on (True). Clear the check box if you want to prevent any one from changing the owner fields and adding and deleting contacts. This flag controls the ability to edit the following fields on the campaign contact or prospect record:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Done Flag</li> <li>■ Contact Last Name</li> <li>■ Prospect Last Name</li> <li>■ Organization Owner</li> <li>■ Position Owner</li> </ul> <p>In addition, when this value is True, the New and Delete buttons are available.</p>
Enable Partner Editing of Contacts	Default is on (True). Clear the check box if you want to prevent partners from editing the fields and using the buttons controlled by the Enable Contact Editing check box.
Enable Partner Editing of Contacts	When this option is checked, partners associated to the campaign (as organizations) will have the ability to add an delete contacts from the campaign list.
Enable Followup Actions	<p>This value controls which buttons (Create Oppty, Create Order, Create Response, Script) are active in the Campaign agent views (Campaign Members). The following list describes the values:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Create Opportunities. The Create Response and Create Oppty buttons are active.</li> <li>■ Create Orders. The Create Response and Create Order buttons are active.</li> <li>■ Create Responses. The Create Responses button is active.</li> <li>■ All. All buttons are active.</li> </ul>
Enforce Approvals	When this option is active, the campaign cannot be launched unless the Approval Status for the campaign and all its associated offers is Approved. You will receive an error if you try to launch a campaign and the conditions are not met.

Table 18. Execution Options - Collaboration Options

Field	Action
Control Campaign	This flag denotes that this campaign is meant to be used as a control group for a test and control program. Control campaigns are hidden from the outbound call center agent views (Campaign Members - Outbound), because control groups should not receive offer messages. Control Campaigns do appear in the Inbound version the Campaign Members view, because you want to be able to capture unsolicited responses.
Enable Contact Editing	When this option is checked, users on the campaign team or group will be able to add an delete contacts from the campaign list.

Table 19. Execution Options - Delivery Options

Field	Action
Apply Wave Lags to Export Files	By default all the exported list files for a wave are sent to the vendor on the launch date. If this option is enforced and you use Wave % splitting and wave lag option in the program schedule view, then the lag days are applied to the file. The files for delayed waves will not be sent until the launch date plus the number of lag days is reached.
Route Contacts	This flag controls whether campaign contacts should be routed to mobile clients. By default all routing rules for campaign contacts are disabled. To reactivate these rules, customers must consult Siebel Expert Services because there will be a performance impact for client synchronization (campaigns have a lot of potential data).
Route Prospects	This flag controls whether campaign prospects should be routed to mobile clients. By default all routing rules for campaign prospects are disabled. To reactivate these rules, customers must consult Siebel Expert Services because there will be a performance impact for client synchronization (campaigns have a lot of potential data).

Table 20. Execution Options - Load Options

Field	Action
Load Behavior	<p>Controls what happens to the previous wave or load when the user opts to load the campaign again. The following is a list of choices:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Overwrite Campaign History. Purges entire existing campaign history and creates a new load.</li> <li>■ Create New Wave. Creates an additional load or wave for the latest load.</li> <li>■ Add to Existing Wave. Finds the most recent good wave (not purged or suspended) and adds the campaign load members to the existing wave.</li> </ul>
Allow Repeated Contacts with Load	<p>Controls whether a specific contact or prospect ID can appear more than once in the same load in the campaign.</p> <p>The unique index in S_CAMP_CON (campaign members or contacts table) is based on Campaign ID, Load Number, Contact/Prospect ID, and Token Number. By default the application always populates a value of 1 in the column, so that uniqueness is driven by the contact and campaign. However, if you turn off this option, the token number becomes a running number so there is no uniqueness enforced at the table level. This scenario is typical in certain industries such as Life Sciences where there is a many-to-many relationship between contacts and accounts. For example, in the pharmaceutical industry, doctors are affiliated with multiple hospitals and the pharma companies send offers to all of their active addresses in the same campaign.</p>

Table 20. Execution Options - Load Options

Field	Action
Source Code Format	The source code format that will be used to generate source codes for the campaign. If the format is associated to the program level too, the value should be carried over when a campaign is created on the program flow.
Generate Source Codes during Load	This option automatically generates source codes for all waves that have not been launched at the completion of the campaign load. If the option is disabled, you need to manually generate the source codes using the Generate Source Codes menu option in the campaign screen.
Capacity Limit per Load	If this value is set to a value greater than 0 (zero), the campaign load will stop inserting campaign members as soon as the capacity is reached. For example, you could limit the campaign size to no more than 1000 people per load.
Max Errors	This setting controls when the campaign load (EAI) process should abort. The load process tabulates the number of rejected records that were not inserted due to errors (bad data and so on). After the Max Errors value is passed, the campaign load process aborts. When this value is 0 (zero), all inserts and updates for the batch are backed out.

## Using Assignment Manager with Campaign Contacts

After setting execution options, you can load and launch the campaign. If you chose to automatically assign an owner and associate an assignment rule group with the campaign, Assignment Manager runs against the contacts in S\_CAMP\_CON at the end of the campaign loading process.

Before launching a campaign, you can add or delete campaign contacts and prospects or change the organization and position owners associated with a contact or prospect.

When this editing process is complete, you can run assignment manager against the campaign contacts and prospects to make sure ownership and visibility are correct. To run Assignment Manager, click the Run Assignment Manager button in the Execution Options view tab. You will be prompted to select a campaign, and then Assignment Manager will run against the campaign history table (S\_CAMP\_CON) for that campaign’s contacts and prospects. For example, partners or employees might add new contacts to the campaign during the review process. Because these new leads might not have the correct owner, you can rerun Assignment Manager to assign these new records.

**NOTE:** You cannot run Assignment Manager until the campaign has successfully loaded.

### ***To automatically assign owners to campaign contacts***

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2** Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design view tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Execution Options.

- 5 Verify that the values in the following fields are correct:
  - Default Organization Owner
  - Default Position Owner
  - Assignment Rule Group
- 6 Load and Launch the campaign.
 

When the Campaign is loaded, Assignment Manager automatically assigns owners to the campaign contacts.
- 7 If you wish to run Assignment Manager again, you can click the Run Assignment Manager button and select the campaign that you want to load and launch.
- 8 Click Run Assignment Manager.
 

The Run Assignment Manager button is only available if you choose Yes - Assignment Manager in the Campaign Contact Ownership field.
- 9 In the Pick Campaign dialog box, select a campaign and click OK.

## Setting Up Campaign Quotas

Quotas are used by Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns and may be set up for a campaign as an incentive for agents to meet target goals. The quota may be a monetary goal such as generating a certain amount of revenue for a campaign or it may be a nonmonetary goal such as making a certain number of calls within a time period.

To develop a quota plan with measurable objectives and rewards for success, use the following process and the quota view tabs to define details. For more information, see *Siebel Incentive Compensation Administration Guide*. This section contains the following topics:

- 1 [Creating Campaign Quota Plans on page 107](#). Create the quota plan, and specify the period it will be in effect.
- 2 [Defining Quotas for the Plan on page 108](#). Specify the objectives for each quota and how performance is measured.
- 3 [Assigning Awards to the Campaign Quota Objective on page 109](#). Define the incentives that participants receive for meeting quota objectives.
- 4 [Assigning Campaign Quota Plan Participants on page 111](#). Select team members eligible to participate in the quota plan.

## Creating Campaign Quota Plans

Use the following procedure to set up quota plan for your campaign. Then, using the procedures that follow, define the details of the quota plan.

**To create a quota plan**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design view tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Quotas.
- 5 In the Quotas list, create a new record.
- 6 Complete the fields for the quota plan.  
Some fields are described in [Table 21](#).

Table 21. Quota Plan Fields

Field	Comment
Active Flag	Automatically set to True when you create the quota.
Description	Description of the quota plan.
End	Automatically populated when the Period field is completed.
Internal Division Name	The name of the internal division associated with this quota.
Period	(Required) The time period for which the quota is active.
Plan Name	(Required) Type a relevant name for the Quota Plan.
Start	Automatically populated when the Period field is completed.

## Defining Quotas for the Plan

After you define the quota plan, add quota objectives that participants must meet to receive incentives. Prior to adding new quotas, add the appropriate Quotas, Awards, and Plan Participants.

**To add quota objectives to the quota plan**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Quotas.

- 5 In the Quotas list, drill down on the plan name.  
The quota plan details appear in the Plan form, and quota objectives appear in the Quotas list.
  - 6 In the Quotas list, create a new record.
  - 7 In the Add Quota Objectives dialog box, select an objective and click OK.
- Repeat [Step 6](#) and [Step 7](#) to add additional quota objectives to the quota plan.

**To edit quota objective values**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Quotas.
- 5 In the Quotas list, drill down on the plan name.  
The quota plan details appear in the form, and quota objectives appear in the Quotas list.
- 6 Select the quota objective record and change values in the appropriate fields.  
Information about some fields in the quota objective record are described in the following table.

Field	Comment
Description	Contains a detailed summary of the quota objective. You can edit this field.
Measure	(Read only) Values are Revenue and Units. You typically add a Target Amount quota for a revenue measure and a Target Quantity quota for a units measure.
Quota Type	(Read only) Values are Amount and Quantity.

The next time you select the quota record, your modifications appear.

## Assigning Awards to the Campaign Quota Objective

Quota plan participants may receive awards for meeting campaign objective goals. A number of awards for different performance achievements may be set up using the Awards view tab list. These awards can then be assigned to quota objectives.

**To assign predefined awards to a quota objective**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:

- In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, select the campaign.
  - 3 Drill down on the campaign name.
  - 4 Click the Design tab.
  - 5 In the Design link bar, click Quotas.
  - 6 In the Quotas list, drill down on the plan name.  
The quota plan details are displayed in the form, and quota objectives appear in the Quotas list.
  - 7 Click the Award select button and, in the Pick Quota Incentive dialog box, select the award for meeting the quota.  
After you click OK, the selection appears in the Award field.
  - 8 In the Target Quantity field, click the calculator button, and use the calculator to type the number of units that represents the quota target.

**To create new awards**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Click the Design tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Quotas.
- 5 In the Quotas list, drill down on the plan name.  
The quota plan details are displayed in the form, and quota objectives appear in the Quotas list.
- 6 In the Administration - Sales Quota link bar, click Awards.
- 7 In the Awards list, create a new record.
- 8 Complete the necessary fields for the award.  
Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comment
Amount	In the field, click the arrow, and use the calculator controls to type the dollar amount for the award. If the type is cash, then this value is the amount of cash given with the award.
Award Date	In the field, click the arrow, and use the calendar controls to specify the date the reward will be given.
Description	Type a description of the award.

Field	Comment
Name	Type a reference name for the award.
Type	Select the award type from the drop-down list. Options are Dinner, Cash, Trip, and Other. Your administrator may change these values to reflect your company's requirements.

## Assigning Campaign Quota Plan Participants

Assign eligible participants to your quota plan using the Participants view tab.

### ***To add participants to the campaign quota plan***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Quotas.
- 5** In the Quotas list, drill down on the plan name.  
Quota objectives appear in the Quotas list.
- 6** Click the Quota Plan Participants view tab.
- 7** In the Participants list, create a new record.
- 8** In the Pick Position dialog box, select the people targeted for quota plan participation, and click OK.

Repeat this procedure to add other participants.

## Setting Up Campaign Assignment Skills

Campaign assignment skills are set up only in Siebel Campaigns. Setting up campaign assignment skills is a way to identify which employees have certain skills and define the attributes of each skill.

Assignment Manager uses assignment skill rules to assign telesales agents to a campaign. Assignment skills are categories, such as Product or Language. Campaign Skill Items are subsets of campaign skills. For example, a skill item for the product campaign skill might be 486 Laptop or Pentium Desktop. A skill item for the language campaign skill might be French or English.

When associating skills with a campaign, first define the assignment skill, and then assign properties to the skill using the Campaign Skill Item list. Fields in the Campaign Skill Item list vary according to the skill. Repeat these procedures to add as many skills as needed to the campaign.

To set up assignment skills for a campaign, perform the following tasks:

- [Associating Assignment Skills with a Campaign on page 112](#)
- [Defining Campaign Skill Items on page 112](#)
- [Deleting Assignment Skills and Campaign Skill Items on page 113](#)

## Associating Assignment Skills with a Campaign

Use the following procedure to define and associate assignment skills required for your campaign.

### ***To associate multiple assignment skills with a campaign***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Assignment Skills.
- 5** In the Assignment Skills list, create a new record.
- 6** Complete the fields, typing comments that describe the skill and how it will be used in the campaign.

## Defining Campaign Skill Items

Use the following procedure to define items for each campaign skill associated with your campaign.

### ***To associate skill items with a skill***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Assignment Skills.
- 5** In the Assignment Skills list, select a skill.
- 6** Scroll down to the Campaign Skill Item list, and create a new record.
- 7** In the Campaign Skill Item list, complete the fields defining the properties for each skill item.

Table 22 defines the skill items in the standard product that may be associated with a skill. Some items are associated with more than one skill.

Table 22. Skill Item Fields

Skill Item Field	Action
Expertise	The expertise required for this skill. Options in the standard product are Novice, Intermediate, and Expert.
Product	The product associated with the skill.

## Deleting Assignment Skills and Campaign Skill Items

You can delete assignment skills and campaign skill items. When you delete an assignment skill, all its campaign skill items are deleted.

### ***To delete an assignment skill and all its campaign skill items***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Assignment Skills.
- 5** In the Assignment Skills list, select the skill and delete the record.  
 You have deleted the assignment skill and the campaign skill items that were associated with it.

### ***To delete a campaign skill item***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** Drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Design tab.
- 4** In the Design link bar, click Assignment Skills.
- 5** In the Assignment Skills list, select the skill.
- 6** Scroll down to the Campaign Skill Item list and select the item you want to delete from the assignment skill.
- 7** Delete the record.

## Using Siebel Marketing with Siebel Events Management

The Siebel Events Management module allows sales and marketing professionals to create, coordinate, and manage events across the enterprise, resulting in improved client interaction and expansion of the marketing message.

Siebel Events Manager 7.7 is integrated with Siebel Marketing 7.7, allowing users to create complex, multistage event marketing programs. Marketing administrators can use the Program Flow view to associate events with marketing campaigns. Upon execution of the campaign, attendees are invited to the event and automatically populated in the event attendee list. Responses are tracked when the attendees decide to accept the invitation and begin the registration process. As a result, event managers can track each attendee through the life of the event, from invitation, confirmation, and attendance.

Customers who have purchased the required license options for both Siebel Marketing and Siebel Events Management, can invite contacts or prospects to an event through an email marketing campaign. Sending this kind of invitation involves creating a target segment or list of invites, associating a related event to a campaign and email offer, and launching the campaign to send out email invitations with an embedded Event Web site URL. During execution, campaigns that have a related event automatically add the campaign contacts or prospects to the event as attendees, with a Registration Status of Invited.

Unlike contacts, prospects are not required to log in to the events Web site in order to register for an event. Therefore, this method for inviting prospects may be particularly useful in the case where third-party prospect lists are imported and not promoted to contacts. Invited prospects are shown in the Events screen, Attendees subview.

### Promoting an Event Using a Campaign

This task assumes that the user has already created an Event and Offer. In most cases, users would invite contacts or prospects using an Email Offer. Siebel Marketing also supports other types of offers, such as Direct Mail, Fax, or SMS. However, the automatic embedding of the Siebel Events Web site URL only works with an Email Offer. To promote an event using a campaign, use the following guidelines:

- Create a campaign adding a Related Event. For additional information, see [“Creating a Campaign” on page 92](#) and [“Associating Related Events with a Campaign” on page 96](#).
- Launch the campaign. For additional information, see [“Launching Programs and Campaigns” on page 129](#).
- After campaign launch, Navigate to the Event screen > Attendees view to see the invited contacts or prospects.

## Promoting an Event Using a Program

This task assumes that the user has already created the Events, Campaigns and Offers and that all three entities are associated (such as associating an offer to a campaign and an event to a campaign). In most cases, users invite contacts or prospects using an Email Offer. Siebel Marketing also supports other types of offers, such as Direct Mail, Fax, or SMS. However, the automatic embedding of the Siebel Events Web site URL only works with an Email Offer. To promote an event using a program, use the following guidelines:

- Create a program. For additional information, see ["Creating a Program" on page 25](#).
- Navigate to the Programs screen and drill down on the program name.
- In the Program Flow workspace, select the campaign used to promote the event.
- In the Objects palette, click and drag the event icon onto the program flow workspace.
- Select the event from the Pick Event dialog box.
- Launch or schedule the program as you normally would. For more information, see ["Executing Programs" on page 34](#).
- After each campaign launch, navigate to the Event screen > Attendees view to see the invited contacts/prospects.

## About Testing Campaign Offers

You can test outbound email, wireless, and fax campaigns in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns before actually sending them to target recipients. You can preview the offer delivery distribution and then launch the email campaign using the Send functionality.

When you use the test offer feature, a sample of the offer is sent to a designated team member, based on his or her position. Because the test functionality references a position rather than a person, if the individual holding the position changes, the test offer automatically is sent to the person actually holding the position.

To test campaigns and offers, see the following topics:

- [Testing Campaigns Business Scenario on page 115](#)
- [Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers on page 116](#)

## Testing Campaigns Business Scenario

The marketing manager of a telecommunications company plans to roll out a campaign that targets mobile communications customers whose service agreements will expire in the next quarter. The campaign features an email containing information on the latest wireless communications offers. The business goal is to retain the accounts of those customers by offering incentives for signing a new service agreement.

The marketing manager uses Test Offer to view the content and format of the email before it is sent to targeted customers.

## Testing Email, Fax, and Wireless Campaign Offers

Test Offer sends samples of email, fax, or wireless offers associated with a particular campaign to designated team members, based on positions. Before testing email offers, make sure you complete the following tasks:

- **Make sure the offer is active.** The date in the Activation Date field for the email offer must have arrived, and the date in the Expiration Date field must be current or in the future for the Test Offer command to be enabled.
- **Associate the offer with a campaign.** Associate the offer with an active campaign. For details, see ["Associating Offers with a Campaign"](#) on page 96.

### *To test email, fax, and wireless campaign offers*

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 In the Campaign form, perform the following steps:
  - a Click the Team select button.
  - b In the Team Members dialog box, select an employee from the Available list, click Add, and then click OK.
- 4 Click the Design view tab.
- 5 In the Design link bar, click Offers.
- 6 In the Offers list, select an email offer.
- 7 Click the menu button and choose Test Offer.
- 8 In the Campaign Team dialog box, choose from the list of available team members, and then click OK.
- 9 Verify the email offer has been sent to the specified email address.

## Using Response Management

Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns use Response Management. Whenever prospects or contacts respond to an offer through any channel (by inbound email, the Web, a call center, or sales representative), their responses may be captured in detail using the Responses screen. Using Response views, you can determine which contacts to pursue as opportunities.

Campaign media can be different from response media. Recipients of an Internet campaign can respond through a call center, and recipients of a direct mail offer may respond by going to a Web offer URL. A Web site can automatically capture response details, while phone calls or direct mail responses must be recorded manually.

**NOTE:** In Siebel Marketing, inbound emails are not automatically captured as responses. You must configure your email response product to support inbound email processing. For Siebel eMail Response set-up instructions, see *Siebel Email Response Administration Guide*.

There are several response types and each response type has several parameters that store details about a given response. You can modify an automatically captured response if you have permission. Responses are tracked for an offer and for a campaign.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Adding Response Information to Prospect or Contact Records on page 117](#)
- [Using Automatic Source Code and Offer Code Lookups on page 118](#)
- [Adding a Product to a Response on page 119](#)
- [Adding an Order to a Response on page 119](#)
- [Adding an Opportunity to a Response on page 120](#)
- [Adding an Attachment to a Response on page 120](#)
- [Response Type Definitions on page 121](#)
- [Promoting a Response to an Opportunity on page 123](#)
- [Creating Automatic Responses from Opportunities and Orders on page 123](#)

## Adding Response Information to Prospect or Contact Records

The All Responses list allows you to view responses to selected campaigns and offers and to add response information to existing prospect or contact records. You can use this view to promote a contact to an opportunity, specify the response type and channel, and score the response. An optional Details form allows you to type additional information about the response.

### ***To add response information to prospect or contact records***

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2** In the Responses list, create a new record.

3 In the Responses list or form, complete the fields using the following table as a guide.

Fields	Comment
Last Name	Select the Last Name for a prospect or contact.  A number of fields are automatically populated based on this selection. These include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The first name of the respondent.</li> <li>■ The account associated with the respondent. If no account is associated, use the Account select button to choose one.</li> <li>■ The account address (city, state, country, telephone number, and so on), that are associated with the respondent are automatically filled in the form.</li> </ul>
Lead Partner	Choose a partner organization to associate with the response. If a lead partner was assigned at the program level or campaign level, it will automatically appear in this field. If you do choose to change the Lead Partner value, the drop-down list shows only those partners associated with the campaign source.
Response Method	(Optional) The method used to capture the response.
Offer Name	(Required) Only offers associated with the selected campaign appear in the list.
Score	Type a numeric value that represents a score for the response.
Source Code	In Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns, source codes are assigned to each campaign contact according to the source code format associated with the program stage. If this information is included in offer materials, the code can be added by the user on the response.
Offer Code	Each offer has a unique offer code. If the offer code is included in the offer materials, the code can be added by the user on the response.

## Using Automatic Source Code and Offer Code Lookups

Behind each Responses view is an automatic business service that will look up and decode information based on any source codes or offer codes added in a response.

### Source Code Lookups

To perform a source code lookup, type the campaign contact’s source code into the Source Code field on the response form and leave the field. You do not have to save the record to perform the lookup. As soon as you click or step off the field, the lookup service will determine whether the campaign is recognized and whether the contact name can be uniquely determined. If the source code is recognized, the correct campaign name will be defaulted. If the contact name can be uniquely determined within a campaign, the contact name will also be defaulted. The source code value is stored in the campaign history table (S\_CAMP\_CON) for each contact record.

## Offer Code Lookups

To perform an offer code lookup, type the offer code in the response form. When you save the record, if the lookup service recognizes the offer code, it defaults the correct offer name.

**NOTE:** If the source code or the offer code is not recognized by the application or if the two codes conflict, both values will be saved with the response to preserve the user data.

If your deployment does not require source code lookups, you can disable the Response Lookup business service in Siebel Tools.

## Adding a Product to a Response

This view tab displays a list of products associated with the response, for example, products for which a respondent requested information using a product link in an email or Web offer.

### *To add products to a response*

- 1 Navigate to the Responses screen > Responses view.
- 2 In the Responses list, drill down on the description.
- 3 Click the Products view tab.
- 4 In the Products list, create a new record.
- 5 In the Add Products dialog box, select the product from the list and click Add.

The list contains products that have been associated with the offer.

## Adding an Order to a Response

This view tab displays a list of the respondent's product orders. An order record contains information on the order status, the order number, type, account associated with the order, the date, priority, and description of the order.

### *To add orders to a response*

- 1 Navigate to the Responses screen > Responses view.
- 2 In the Responses list, drill down on the description.
- 3 Click the Orders view tab.
- 4 In the Orders list, create a new record.
- 5 In the Add Orders dialog box, select the order from the list, and click Add.

## Adding an Opportunity to a Response

This view tab displays a list of opportunities associated with the response.

### ***To add opportunities to a response***

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen > Responses view.
- 2** In the Responses list, drill down on the description.
- 3** Click the Opportunities view tab.
- 4** In the Opportunities list, create a new record.
- 5** In the Add Opportunities dialog box, select the opportunity from the list, and click Add.

## Adding an Attachment to a Response

This view tab displays a list of documents and other items that are associated with the response record.

### ***To add attachments to a response***

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2** In the Responses list, drill down on the description.
- 3** Click the Attachments view tab.
- 4** To add a URL, in the Attachments list, perform the following steps:
  - a** Click New URL.
  - b** In the URL field, type the URL, and click Add.
- 5** To attach a file, in the Attachments list, perform the following steps:
  - a** Click New File.
  - b** In the Choose File dialog box, select the file, and click Open.

## Response Type Definitions

The information captured and stored in the Response Details view depends on the response type that you select in the Response Type field of the response record. For each response type value, [Table 23](#) identifies some of the field names in which information is captured and describes the captured information.

**NOTE:** A Response is not automatically created when you click a Related Events link in an email or Web offer. Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns do not provide responses for Clicked on Related Event.

Table 23. Response Type Field Values in the Response Details Form

Response Type	Field Name	Captured Information and Description
Clicked on Product URL	Summary	Name of the product. The list of product URLs the respondent clicked appears in the Responses screen, Products view.
Clicked on Web Offer	Summary	Name of the Web offer that was clicked by the offer recipient.
Clicked on Web Survey	Summary	Name of the Web survey that was clicked by the offer recipient.
Completed Web Survey	Summary	Name of the Web survey that was clicked by the offer recipient.
Downloaded Info Files	Downloaded File	Name of the downloaded file.
	Subject	Subject of the file.
	Summary	Optional comment.
Email Reply	Subject	Subject of the file.
	Summary	Optional comment.
Read Receipt	Not applicable	<p>An optional response type that requires additional configuration to support automatic creation.</p> <p>Marketers can embed an HTML tag in HTML emails that allows Siebel Marketing to count each time the email is opened (read). The read receipt tag contains an image request. When that image is requested it is interpreted as an opened email.</p>

Table 23. Response Type Field Values in the Response Details Form

Response Type	Field Name	Captured Information and Description
Requested Call Back	Phone #	Respondent's phone number.
	Time of day	Allows the respondent to specify a preference for the time of callback. Choices are Morning, Afternoon, and Evening.
	Priority	Priority level of the callback request. Choices are Urgent, High, Medium, and Low.
	Summary	Automatically stores the comments for a Web-generated response or can be edited manually.
	Topic	Can store the subject line of an inbound email or be edited manually. The list of products for which the respondent requested a callback appears in the Responses screen, Products list.
Requested More Info	Ship Method	The preferred method of delivery—direct mail, email, fax, or phone—that the customer has specified be used for delivery of information.
	Fax	Fax number, if the delivery method is fax.
	Email	Email address, if the delivery method is email.
	Phone	Phone number, if the delivery method is phone.
	Comments	Automatically stores the comments for a Web-generated response. Other comments may be entered manually.
	Topic	Can store the subject line of an inbound email or be edited manually.
	Street Address, City, State, ZIP, Country	The address to which the information will be mailed if the preferred delivery method is direct mail.  The list of products for which the respondent requested information appears in the Responses screen, Products list.
Requested Unsubscribe Response	Email, Fax, Phone, Direct Mail	The choices are subscribe and unsubscribe.
	Time of Day (Subscribe by phone)	Allows the respondent to specify a preference for a time if the respondent wishes to subscribe by telephone. Choices are Morning, Afternoon, and Evening.
	Subject	Can store the subject line of an inbound email or be edited manually.
	Summary	Contents of the email. Applies only to campaign responses.

Table 23. Response Type Field Values in the Response Details Form

Response Type	Field Name	Captured Information and Description
Respondent Purchased	Not applicable	This response is not created automatically. You must use Siebel Business Process Designer to capture responses of this type.  The orders for this purchase are displayed in the Responses screen's Orders view.
Respondent Unreachable	Summary	Optional comment.
Response Created Opportunity	Summary	The list of opportunities can be accessed by selecting the Responses Opportunities view.
Unclassified Response	Not applicable	The response does not fall into one of the main response type categories or is a campaign response that requires manual processing.
	Subject	Subject of the email. Applies only to campaign responses.
	Summary	Contents of the email. Applies only to campaign responses.

## Promoting a Response to an Opportunity

If the customer is interested in the product offered by the campaign, you can promote the response to an opportunity. If the customer is an existing contact, the account is automatically associated with the opportunity. If the customer is a prospect, the customer is automatically promoted to a contact, and then associated with an account.

### ***To promote a response to an opportunity***

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2** In the Responses list, drill down on the Description name.
- 3** In the Response form, click Create Opportunity button.

The Opportunity form appears, with the response information in the form, and the contact information in the Campaign Leads Contacts list.

## Creating Automatic Responses from Opportunities and Orders

When you create an opportunity in the All Contacts/Prospects view using the Create Opty button, Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns create a response record using the Create Auto Response business service.

For opportunities, the response is created for each contact added to an opportunity after a campaign is associated as an opportunity source. To create the response, associate a campaign with the opportunity using the Source field MVG (multi-value group) and then add a contact to the opportunity. All responses default to a type of Created Opportunity.

For orders, the response is created whenever a campaign is associated with a sales order. To create the response, you associate a campaign with the Sales Order using the Campaign field. All responses default to a Type of Respondent Purchased.

### Associating an Opportunity with a Campaign

To associate an opportunity to a campaign, you use the Source field on the Opportunity form to select the campaign name. Each opportunity can be associated with multiple sources, if appropriate, but only one can be designated as the primary source.

When this association is made, the opportunity appears under the Campaign Track Results tab in the Opportunities view with the Sourced from Marketing flag checked.

### Associating an Order with a Campaign

To associate an order with a campaign, you use the Campaign field on the order form to select the campaign name.

## Using Campaign Explorer

You can use the Campaign Explorer view in Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns to monitor subcampaigns, contacts, activities, and offers for each campaign. The left pane of this view contains an explorer and the right pane shows the details of the selected campaign.

You can use the detail list to add folder items. For example, to add an activity, you select the Activity folder in the left pane, and the Activities list appears on the right. Then, from the list, you add a new activity record.

#### ***To review campaign elements***

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen > Explorer view.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen > Explorer view.
- 2 In the Campaign Explorer, expand the folders for each campaign to display subfolders of campaign elements.
- 3 Click a folder to display detail of the subcampaign, contacts, activities, and offers in the list on the right.

#### ***To add items to folders***

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:

- In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen > Explorer view.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen > Explorer view.
- 2 In the Campaign Explorer, expand the campaign item to show its subfolders.
  - 3 Click a subfolder.
  - 4 In the details list, add a new record and complete the fields.

## Loading Customers in Campaigns

When you load a campaign, the campaign members are added to the campaign history by loading segments and lists (as well as any names added manually using the user interface). For information about segments, see ["Marketing Segments and Segment Trees" on page 35](#).

The following types of lists are used by Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns:

- **External lists.** You can import purchased or rented lists into your Siebel system using List Management. When you use List Management with Siebel Data Quality you can scrub lists for duplicates during the import process. For details, see ["Importing and Managing External Lists" on page 147](#).
- **Internal lists.** You can also use List Management to maintain lists created from records that already exist in your contacts or prospects databases. For details, see ["Creating and Managing Internal Lists" on page 159](#).
- **D&B lists.** D&B lists are generated from D&B libraries of companies based on criteria you define. The D&B module provides a library of incorporated businesses that you can market to. Using the D&B screen you can create a list of D&B contacts to use in your campaign. For details, see the chapter about D&B in *Applications Administration Guide*.

To load customers in a campaign, you perform the following tasks:

- [Associating a List of Prospects or Contacts with a Campaign on page 125](#)
- [Adding Contacts and Prospects to a Campaign Individually on page 126](#)
- [Viewing Campaign Contacts and Prospects on page 127](#)
- [Loading Campaigns on page 127](#)

## Associating a List of Prospects or Contacts with a Campaign

This topic discusses associating an imported (or purchased) list and an internal list of prospects or contacts with a campaign.

When you associate a purchased list with a campaign, you import the list, and then associate the list with a campaign. Prospects will only be visible in the Campaign Contacts list if you successfully import the purchased list before associating it with a campaign. If contacts or prospects are added to a list after you associate that list with a campaign, you need to suspend the wave that did not include the new customers and load the campaign again.

**CAUTION:** If you associate an empty list (a list prepared for import but not yet imported) with a campaign and then import the list, the prospects are not associated with the campaign and are not visible in the Campaign Prospects list.

After you associate a list with a campaign, you will not immediately see data in the Contact/Prospect List. You must load the campaign before the members are added to the campaign history. The list is populated after the Marketing Campaign Load workflow process runs, and you may need to refresh the browser view to see the newly associated names. For more information, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*.

Use the following procedure to associate available imported or internal lists of contacts and prospects with your campaigns. Before you associate a list with a campaign, make sure that the Siebel Server, the Object Manager component, and Workflow Process Manager component are running.

**NOTE:** Only active campaign lists can be associated with a campaign.

### **To associate a list of prospects or contacts with a campaign**

- 1 Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2 In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Select the Design view tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Segments\Lists.
- 5 Click the Add List button.
- 6 In the Add Lists dialog box, select the list you want and click OK.

**NOTE:** When you associate a campaign list with a campaign, contacts in that list are associated with the campaign. If you change the campaign list to be inactive or if you delete it, the contacts still appear in the Contacts/Prospects list for that campaign.

## **Adding Contacts and Prospects to a Campaign Individually**

In addition to loading a campaign from segments, lists, or both, you can add individual contacts and prospects to a campaign. The ability to add or delete contacts and prospects can be controlled in the Execution Options view by using two flags (Enable Contact Editing and Enable Partner Editing of Contacts). If these flags are checked, the New and Delete buttons will be available. The buttons are available in Siebel Campaigns in the Campaign Administration views, but not the other Campaign views. For more information, see ["Setting Up Campaign Execution Options" on page 100](#).

After you add a list of contacts and prospects, all contacts and prospects in the list appear in the Campaign Contacts or Prospects view. From this view, you can also add contacts and prospects one at a time. For more information, see [Chapter 8, "List Management."](#)

### ***To add a contact or prospect to a campaign***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Execute view tab.
- 4** In the Execute link bar, click All Contacts/Prospects.  
The list of available contacts or prospects appears, with information on the selected contact or prospect record displayed in the Contact or Prospect Details form.
- 5** In the Contacts or Prospects list, add a new record.
- 6** In the Contact Last Name or Prospect Last Name field, click the select button and, in the Pick dialog box, perform one of the following actions:
  - a** Select an existing record, and click OK.
  - b** Click New to create a new contact or prospect, then type the information, and click OK.
- 7** In the All Contacts/Prospects Detail form, complete the fields.

## **Viewing Campaign Contacts and Prospects**

If you have access to the campaign, you can view the assigned contacts and prospects using one of the following procedures.

### ***To view marketing contacts and prospects***

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns screen > Campaigns List view.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** In the Execute link bar, click All Contacts/Prospects.  
The Contacts/Prospects list appears, showing only the assigned contacts and prospects for that campaign.

## **Loading Campaigns**

After you associate your lists, segments, and segment tree cells with your campaign, you can load the campaign. Campaigns can be loaded from the Campaign form in any of the Campaign Management views or from the Campaigns list.

### **To load a campaign from the Campaigns screen**

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 From the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 In the Campaign or Campaign Details form, click the menu button, and choose Load Campaign.
 

**NOTE:** The Load Campaign option is active only if your system administrator has given you this privilege using the Marketing access groups.
- 4 In the Load Campaign dialog box, assign the date and time for the load to start, and then click OK.
- 5 Click the Execute view tab to review the load status.
- 6 In the Execute link bar, perform the following steps:
  - a To see the history of each wave that has been loaded, click Execution Status.
  - b To see details of the load process, click System Tasks.
- 7 Click Refresh to update the load status.

## **Reviewing Contacts and Prospects in Active Campaigns**

Sales people and contact center employees can use the Campaign Members dashboard to review the contacts and prospects in active campaigns. The Campaign Member views display a queue of active campaign contacts/prospects and a campaign summary, contact and prospect summary.

The Campaign Members screen allows each employee to view the active campaign members according to several levels of visibility, including the following levels:

- **My Campaign Members.** Displays all campaign contacts/prospects that are specifically assigned to the employee's position.
- **My Group's Campaign Members.** Displays all campaign contacts/prospects in campaigns where the employee's position is on the campaign team or campaign group
- **All Campaign Members - Outbound.** Displays all campaign contacts/prospects in active, launched campaign waves and the campaign members that are assigned to the employee's organization. This view does not display any members of control campaigns.
- **All Campaign Members - Inbound.** Displays all campaign contacts/prospects in active, launched campaign waves and the campaign members that are assigned to the employee's organization. This view includes members of control campaigns.

The Campaign agent views only display campaign members (contacts and prospects) that are in active campaigns and for which campaign waves have been launched to the contact center. Any waves that have not been launched by a member of the campaign team or administrator will not appear.

# 7

## Launching Programs and Campaigns

This section contains the following topics:

- [About Previewing and Generating Lists on page 129](#)
- [About Launching Programs and Campaigns on page 131](#)
- [Requirements for Launching Campaigns Manually on page 132](#)
- [Launching Campaigns Manually on page 132](#)
- [Launching Email and Fax Campaigns on page 133](#)
- [Checking Campaign Launch Status on page 133](#)
- [Suspending and Relaunching Email Campaigns on page 134](#)
- [Using the Schedule Calendar View on page 135](#)
- [Viewing Campaign Charts in Siebel Campaigns on page 138](#)
- [Viewing Response Charts in Siebel Campaigns on page 142](#)

### About Previewing and Generating Lists

You can create output lists of contacts for export to a fulfillment partner or another application. Direct mail vendors often require specific formatting of campaign lists. When a campaign is ready for launching, the target list may be exported according to a flexible list format and distributed using FTP or email. You can define, manage, and preview the list format without the intervention of a system or marketing administrator. Default formats can be assigned for each vendor.

You can preview a sample of the list to determine if the output file layout is what you want and then generate the actual distribution list that will be sent to vendors.

After a list has been generated, the records in it will not change even when the contacts and prospects who meet the segmentation criteria change. If you modify the members of the campaign, you should regenerate the list files using the latest data.

Lists can be generated manually using the List Distribution view in the Campaign screen or automatically scheduled as part of a scheduled launch of a program stage or stand-alone campaign.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Previewing a List on page 130](#)
- [Manually Generating a Campaign List on page 130](#)

## Previewing a List

Prior to launching a campaign, you can use a preview list format to verify the data for the members of the associated segments. To generate this preview file, your Export List Format should be built so that it exports data from same data source where the campaign load data will also be extracted. Typically, this will be the Siebel Data Warehouse or another data mart or data warehouse where the segment members are extracted during campaign load.

### **To generate a preview list**

- 1** Verify that an export list format exists and meets the requirements stated in this section.
- 2** Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 3** In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 4** Click the Execute view tab.
- 5** In the Execute link bar, click List Distribution.
- 6** In the Vendor list, click New.
- 7** Using the vendor select button, select a vendor.
- 8** Using the Export List Format select button, select one or more export list formats.

**NOTE:** Select the list format that you created in [Step 1](#) from the folders.

- 9** Click Generate Output Lists to generate the preview file.
- 10** In the dialog box, select one or more waves, and then click OK.

Give the system a few minutes to process the job, and then click the Refresh button in the Generated Lists applet. If you want to monitor the job, in the Execute link bar, click System Tasks.

When the file is created, it appears in the Generated Lists list. If the list format has splits set up in the formatting, multiple files appear in the list. Refer the Content Description column to view details about the file contents. Drill on the list name to open it, or save it to your computer.

## Manually Generating a Campaign List

The following procedure explains how to manually generate a list for a campaign.

### **To generate a list for a campaign**

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2** In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3** Click the Execute view tab.
- 4** In the Execute link bar, click List Distribution.
- 5** Click New to create a new list distribution entry.

- 6 Select a vendor.  
If the vendor has a default list format, that format name appears in the Export List Format field.
- 7 Click the Export List Format select button.
- 8 In the dialog box, select your list format from the folders.
- 9 Click Generate Output Lists to generate the file.
- 10 Give the system a few seconds or minutes to process, and then click the Refresh button in the Generated Lists applet. If desired, the System Tasks view under Execute tab to monitor the job.
- 11 When the file is created, it will appear in the Generated Lists list. If the list format has splits set up in the formatting, multiple files will appear in the list. Refer the Content Description column to view details about the file contents. Drill on the list name to open it, or save it to your computer.

## About Launching Programs and Campaigns

When you launch a campaign, the Server Request Broker starts the Marketing Campaign Launch workflow process. This process automatically sends contact list files to specified vendors, most commonly using FTP (file transfer protocol), and email offers are sent to targeted recipients.

You can launch a marketing program in the following ways:

- **Launch a campaign manually.** You can launch a campaign using the campaign form menu in any of the campaign views or by right-clicking on the campaign object in the program flow. For more information about manual execution, see ["Launching Campaigns Manually" on page 132](#).
- **Launch a program stage automatically.** You can schedule a stage of a program to launch automatically (including all the campaigns in the stage) from the Program screen. In the Schedule view tab, click the Calendar link. For more information about automatic execution, see ["Using the Schedule Calendar View" on page 135](#).
- **Launch a campaign automatically.** You can schedule a campaign to launch automatically from the Campaign screen. In the Schedule view tab, click the Calendar link.

Email campaigns are launched through the Siebel Email Marketing Server. Export list files, wireless offers, and faxes are distributed through the Siebel Communication Server. Make sure that your Email Marketing Server and Communication Server are online so that the launch completes successfully.

When you launch a campaign, you must know which campaign wave or waves you want to launch, especially if your campaign is a recurring campaign. In most cases, the wave you want is the most recent wave. However, when you launch the campaign, make sure that you select the correct wave from the Launch Waves dialog box.

**NOTE:** On the Marketing Server component, a parameter called Wave Batch Size determines the number of subwaves created. Each subwave creates a new request or thread to the email sending daemon.

For email campaigns, the Email marketing server can process parallel tasks for improved scalability. To enable the generation of email files for each thread, be sure to split the Email Server list format correctly.

## Requirements for Launching Campaigns Manually

Before launching a campaign manually, make sure you have performed the following tasks:

- Add a position to the marketing Administrators Access Group. The position of the person who launches the campaign must be a member of the Marketing Administrators access group. If the position is not part of this access group, the launch buttons will be unavailable. For instructions, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** This also applies to a partner using the Siebel Partner Portal.

- In the Campaign List Distribution view, set up vendors and export list formats.
- Load any segments, segment tree cells, and lists that you plan to use into the campaign history.
- If you plan to send offers that use a distribution profile, test the campaign to make sure that the profile is set up correctly and that offer is sent with expected results. For more information on testing campaigns, see ["About Testing Campaign Offers" on page 115](#).

## Launching Campaigns Manually

You may choose to manually launch one or more waves of a campaign. You can launch a campaign using the applet menu on the campaign form in any of the campaign views or by right-clicking on the campaign in the program flow.

After performing tasks in ["Requirements for Launching Campaigns Manually,"](#) you are ready to launch the campaign. Launching a campaign calls the Marketing Campaign Launch workflow process. After launching a campaign, you can check the results by looking at history records for programs, stages, and campaigns.

### ***To manually launch campaigns***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 From the campaign form menu, choose Launch Campaign.

The Launch Campaign Dialog Box contains the valid waves that are available for launching. Waves with a status of Loading, Load Failed, Scheduled, Launched, Purged, or Purge Failed are not shown.

- 4 In the Launch Campaign dialog box, select the wave or waves you want to launch, and click OK.

## Launching Email and Fax Campaigns

If you have tested your email or fax campaign, and the results are satisfactory, you are ready to send the email offers to campaign recipients.

### ***To send email and fax offers***

- 1** Use the step in the following list that applies to your product:
  - In Siebel Marketing, navigate to the Campaigns screen.
  - In other Siebel applications, navigate to the Campaign Management screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, select the campaign.
- 3** Drill down on the campaign name.
- 4** Click the Design view tab.
- 5** In the Campaigns form, click the menu button, and select Launch Campaign.
- 6** In the Launch Waves dialog box, select the wave that you want to send, and click OK.

## Checking Campaign Launch Status

Navigate to the System Tasks view to check the status of the campaign launch. If campaign launch fails, you can view an error log using the Administration - Server Management screen's Tasks view.

### ***To monitor campaign launch status***

- 1** Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2** In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name that you launched.
- 3** Click the Execute view tab.
- 4** In the Execute view link bar, click System Task.
- 5** In the System Tasks list, search for the Campaign Launch and Wave Launch jobs.  
Use the Wave # field to find the wave that you launched.
- 6** In the System Tasks list, click Refresh to update the values in the record.

When the launch process completes, the status indicator turns green. If the launch encounters an error, the status indicator turns red and the error message appears in the System Tasks and Task Log lists.

**NOTE:** Scroll down to see the Task Log list.

## Suspending and Relaunching Email Campaigns

A wave of a campaign can be suspended and relaunched in the event of an error or need to roll back a wave. For example, if email offers fail to be delivered due to a setup problem in the Email Marketing Server, you can relaunch the wave to resend the offers. Also, if you launch a wave into the call center, you can recall the wave so that it no longer appears to sales agents until the wave is relaunched.

### ***To suspend a campaign wave***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on a campaign name.
- 3 Click the Execute view tab.
- 4 In the Execute link bar, click Execution Status.
- 5 Locate the Wave with a Launched or Launch Failed status.  
Use the Wave # field to confirm that you are viewing the correct wave.
- 6 To suspend the wave, select the wave record and click Suspend Wave.
- 7 After the wave is suspended, Suspended appears in the Status field.

Make the necessary corrections to the system and then relaunch the campaign wave.

### ***To relaunch a suspended campaign wave***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name that you want to relaunch.
- 3 Click the Execute view tab.
- 4 In the Execute link bar, click Execution Status.
- 5 Locate the Wave that you want to relaunch.  
Use the Wave # field to confirm that you are viewing the correct wave.
- 6 In the Wave list, select the wave record, and click Launch Wave.

Launching a suspended wave resends any email offers, wireless offers, and vendor list files. It also causes the campaign members in the wave to reappear in the call center.

## Using the Schedule Calendar View

When you complete a program design using Program Flow, you can schedule a stage of the program for automatic execution using the Schedule calendar view. During automatic program execution, the Campaign Load and Marketing Campaign Launch workflow processes run for each campaign in the stage. If the stage is recurring, when the run of the stage is completed, it reschedules itself automatically for the next run. For more information about workflow processes, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

The Schedule view displays the details of the selected program in the Program form at the top and a calendar at the bottom.

### Scheduling a Stage Execution

Use the following procedure to schedule stages of a program for automatic execution.

#### **To schedule the execution of a stage**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 Click the Schedule view tab.
- 4 In the Calendar view, click the calendar icon for the date that the program will start.
- 5 In the activity form, complete the fields using [Table 24 on page 135](#) as a guide.
- 6 Select the Active Flag so that the scheduling will take effect.

If you select the active flag, the stage executes as soon as the activity time arrives. If you do not select the active flag, no execution occurs.

- 7 Click Save This One when you are ready to save the schedule.

The stage name and launch time appear in the Schedule calendar. The calendar also reflects any recurrence of the stage.

Table 24. Activity Fields for a Stage Execution

Field	Comment
Comment	Type additional information about the program schedule, if desired.
Description	This field automatically displays the previously added program description. Type additional information if desired.
Frequency	If the program is repeating, choose the repeat cycle from the list. Options are Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, and Yearly.
Planned Completion	The default value in this field is the program's end date. Click the calendar select button, use the calendar controls to set the date and time.

Table 24. Activity Fields for a Stage Execution

Field	Comment
Planned Start	The default value in this field is the program start date. Click the calendar select button, and use calendar controls to set the start date and time for program execution.
Stage	(Required) You must select the stage of the program that should execute.
Type	(Required) The Type field displays Stage Execution as the default. If Marketing Program does not appear in the field, select it from the list.
Until	If the stage repeats over time and you want to delete every repeating instance, choose Delete All.

**To edit the schedule**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, drill down on the program name.
- 3 Click the Schedule view tab.
- 4 In the Schedule’s calendar, drill down on the program name.  
Make sure the Active Flag is still checked so that execution will occur.
- 5 In the Schedule form, make changes, and click Save This One.

**To delete a schedule**

- 1 Navigate to the Programs screen.
- 2 In the Programs list, click the Schedule view tab.
- 3 In the Schedule’s calendar, drill down on the program name to open the Schedule form.
- 4 Click the menu button, and choose Delete This One.  
If the stage repeats over time, you will be asked if you want to delete a single instance or every repeating instance.

## Scheduling the Execution of a Campaign

Do not perform this procedure if you already plan to automatically schedule the parent stage for the same campaign. Doing so will cause the campaign to be launched twice.

**To schedule the execution of a campaign:**

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaign list, drill down on the campaign name.
- 3 Select the Schedule view tab.

- 4 In the Schedule calendar, click the calendar icon in the day that the campaign will start.
- 5 In the activity form, in the Activity Type field, select Campaign Load and complete the remaining fields using [Table 24 on page 135](#) as a guide.

**NOTE:** Be sure to check the Active Flag for the scheduling to take effect. If the active flag is set, the campaign load will launch as soon as the activity time arrives. If the active flag is not set, no execution will occur.

- 6 Click Save This One when you are ready to save the schedule.

The campaign name and load time appear in the Schedule calendar. The calendar also reflects any recurrence of the activity.

- 7 Click New to create another activity.

- 8 In the activity form, in the Activity Type field, select Campaign Launch and complete the remaining fields using [Table 24 on page 135](#) as a guide.

Make sure to set the start time of the campaign launch activity so that the preceding campaign load activity will be complete before the corresponding campaign launch begins.

- 9 Verify that the Active Flag is set so that the scheduling will take effect.

- 10 Click Save This One when you are ready to save the schedule.

The campaign name and launch time appear in the Schedule calendar. The calendar also reflects any recurrence of the activity.

## Understanding the Marketing Campaign Launch Workflow Process

When you launch a campaign, the Marketing Campaign Launch workflow process initiates. For more information about workflow processes, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

The exported list file is sent to each vendor in the List Distribution list of the Waves view, using distribution adapters and profile information. For example:

- **Email.** The exported list file is emailed to the vendor's primary contact.
- **FTP.** Each vendor has a profile specifying the host name, user name, and password. The exported list file is sent using File Transfer Protocol to the vendor's FTP server.

For each wave, the server receives a request to send each valid offer in the campaign on the day the program is executed, adding to that date any lag days defined in the wave. Only those contacts or prospects assigned to a particular wave will receive the offer.

# Viewing Campaign Charts in Siebel Campaigns

Campaign charts are used only by Siebel Campaigns and allow you to review performance and graphically display results in a chart for areas such as incentive compensation, completed calls, lead quality by campaign, and so on. When you view a chart, the saved query in the upper-right corner filters the information shown in the chart.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Viewing a Campaign Achievement Chart on page 138](#)
- [Viewing a Call Status Analysis Chart on page 139](#)
- [Viewing a Call Status Analysis by Employee Chart on page 139](#)
- [Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign Chart on page 140](#)
- [Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Response Chart on page 140](#)
- [Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis Chart on page 141](#)
- [Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee Chart on page 141](#)
- [Viewing an Order Revenue Analysis Chart on page 141](#)
- [Viewing a Campaign Trend Analysis Chart on page 142](#)
- [Viewing a Trend Analysis by Employee Chart on page 142](#)

## Viewing a Campaign Achievement Chart

The Campaign Achievement chart displays the results of the Sales Quota Plan set up for each campaign. The chart represents the percent achievement of quota for each campaign and applies Incentive Compensation functionality to campaigns.

Perform the following tasks before viewing campaign achievement charts.

- 1** Create a quota plan, and associate quota plan objectives and participants with the plan.  
Quotas are discussed in "[Creating Campaign Quota Plans](#)" on page 107. For more information, see *Siebel Incentive Compensation Administration Guide*.
- 2** Type achievement values by performing these tasks:
  - a** Navigate to the Sales Quotas screen.
  - b** In the Quota Achievement list, select the quota plan.
  - c** Type the amount you achieved compared to quota numbers.

Achievements may be added manually or by using a workflow process that automatically completes achievements based on actions in Siebel Call Center.

You can view the Campaign Achievement Chart from the Achievement Analysis view of the Sales Quota screen or the Charts view of the Campaigns screen.

### **To view Campaign Achievements in Siebel Campaigns**

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns link bar, select Charts.
- 3 In the drop-down list, select Campaign Achievements.
- 4 In the Objects Against Achievement list, select the plan name.
- 5 In the By drop-down list, select Campaign Name or Objective Name.
- 6 Select the chart type from the third drop-down list.
- 7 Click Go to display the chart.

## **Viewing a Call Status Analysis Chart**

The Call Status Analysis chart displays the number of calls that have been completed compared to the number of calls that have not been completed for each campaign. This chart can be used by a call center manager to determine which campaigns are lagging and where to shift resources.

Perform the following tasks before creating the Call Status Analysis chart:

- 1 Assign any contacts and prospects you will be contacting to the campaign.  
For details, see ["Adding Contacts and Prospects to a Campaign Individually"](#) on page 126.
- 2 After each contact or prospect is called, update the status in the Call Status field in the Contacts or Prospects list or form.

The chart is based on information from this field—a Call Completed flag indicates that the call is completed—and the number of contacts and prospects targeted by the campaign.

## **Viewing a Call Status Analysis by Employee Chart**

The Call Status Analysis by Employee chart displays completed and uncompleted calls by a specified employee for each campaign. The values for this chart may be derived from lists of contacts and prospects assigned to the position and the Calls Completed field for the contact or prospect record in the Contacts or Prospects view.

A campaign list can be associated with a position. When such association occurs, the position becomes the owner of the Campaign Contacts or Campaign Prospects. If the OwnerID is assigned, then only the employees of that position can view the Campaign Contacts or Prospects for a particular campaign. If the list is not assigned, then the OwnerID is NULL and all employees assigned to the Campaign Team or Campaign Group can see the Contacts or Prospects view.

Perform the following tasks before generating the Call Status Analysis by Employee chart.

- 1 If the employee position will be evaluated based on lists of contacts and prospects, assign the lists to the position in the Campaign Lists view.

The position becomes the owner of the list's contacts and prospects.

When you associate a list with a campaign, if the Position field is not empty, then the OwnerID or each contact or prospect in that list is associated with that position.

Most companies do not assign the contacts or prospects to a position, so the OwnerID is NULL. In such cases, the chart shows only one employee: Unknown.

- 2 Update call status in the Campaign Contacts view.

The chart draws its values on which contacts have been called based on the Done flag in the Call Status field. Make sure this field reflects the current status of the call.

## Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign Chart

The Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign chart displays the opportunities that have been created for the campaign when the Response Type is set to Opportunity. Using this chart, you can display opportunities by number of opportunities, by total opportunity revenue, or by average opportunity broken out by lead quality.

Perform the following tasks before viewing the chart:

- In the Campaigns list, drill down on the campaign name, click the Responses view tab, and verify that the Response Type field is set to Opportunity.
- In the Opportunities screen, for each opportunity created for a campaign, make sure values are typed in the Revenue, Lead Quality, and Source fields.

You can use the My Opportunities or All Opportunities views to see the opportunities you need to check.

## Viewing a Lead Quality Analysis by Response Chart

The Lead Quality by Response chart displays the opportunities that have been created for a campaign when the campaign's Response Type is set to Response. The chart displays opportunities by number of opportunities, by total opportunity revenue, or by average opportunity broken out by lead quality.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 In the Campaigns list, make sure the Response Type is set to Opportunity.  
The Response Type field is in the Response's view tab, after drilling down on the campaign name.
- 2 In the Opportunities screen, make sure that the Revenue, Lead Quality, and Source fields are completed for each opportunity.

## Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis Chart

The Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart displays the campaign's Number of Opportunities and the Expected Revenue for those Opportunities. The left axis is Opportunity Revenue and the bar chart corresponds to Revenue. The right axis is the Number of Opportunities and the line chart corresponds to Revenue.

When using the chart, Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Campaign, only campaigns set to response type Response are used to create the chart.

This chart allows you to view the relationship between the amount of revenue and the number of opportunities for campaigns. For example, a campaign administrator might use the chart to identify campaigns that are generating a high volume of opportunities but have a low potential for revenue and campaigns which generate a smaller number of opportunities but have a higher potential revenue per opportunity.

Before generating the chart, navigate to the Opportunities screen and make sure that, for each opportunity associated with the campaign, the Revenue field contains a value.

## Viewing an Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee Chart

The Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee chart shows the number of Opportunities and the potential revenue for opportunities for each employee. It displays information in the same way as the Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart, but targets employees in the analysis.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Navigate to the Opportunities screen.
- 2 Select an opportunity associated with the campaign.
- 3 Make sure that the Revenue contains a value.
- 4 In the Sales Team field, type the User ID of the agent generating the opportunity.

## Viewing an Order Revenue Analysis Chart

The Order Revenue Analysis Chart shows the total revenue for orders generated by campaign.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 Select a Campaign with the Response Type set to Response.

**NOTE:** This chart only shows data for campaigns with Response Type set to Response.

The Response Type field is in the Response's view tab, after drilling down on the campaign name.

- 3 Drill down on the campaign name.

- 4 Click the My Contacts/Prospects view tab.
- 5 Click Create Response.
- 6 For this response, click the Orders tab and create a new record.
- 7 Click the Order number to type details for the order.

## Viewing a Campaign Trend Analysis Chart

The Campaign Trend Analysis chart displays the total number of responses for each campaign over a period of time. The period can be set to day, week, month, quarter, or year.

Before generating the chart, review responses for each campaign by navigating to the Campaigns view, selecting the campaign, and clicking the Responses view tab.

## Viewing a Trend Analysis by Employee Chart

The Campaign Trend Analysis chart displays the total number of responses generated by each employee across campaigns over a period of time. The period can be specified by day, week, month, quarter, or year.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, drill down on the Name.
- 3 Click the Track Results view tab.
- 4 In the Track Result link bar, click Responses.
- 5 Review the list of responses, making a note of the description and user.
- 6 Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 7 For each response you found in [Step 5](#), make sure that the Created By field contains the User ID of the employee who handled the response and, therefore, owns it.

# Viewing Response Charts in Siebel Campaigns

Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns include response charts. Response charts allow you to analyze response to your campaigns in areas such as opportunities, revenue, campaign offers, and so on. When you view a chart, the saved query in the upper-right corner filters the information shown in the chart.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Campaign Analysis \(Response\) on page 143](#)

- [Viewing an Opportunity Analysis \(Response\) Chart on page 143](#)
- [Viewing an Offer Analysis \(Response\) Chart on page 144](#)
- [Viewing an Offer Type Analysis \(Response\) Chart on page 144](#)
- [Viewing an Offer Type Analysis \(Response\) by Campaign Chart on page 144](#)
- [Viewing a Revenue Analysis \(Response\) Chart on page 145](#)
- [Viewing an Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis \(Response\) Chart on page 145](#)

### ***To access Response charts***

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen > Charts view.
- 2** In the Charts view use the visibility filter to select the type of data you want to display.
- 3** In the drop-down list below the Show field, select the type of chart and click Go.  
To change the type of chart, select a different type and click Go.

## **Campaign Analysis (Response)**

The Campaign Analysis chart displays the total number of responses for each campaign.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2** In the Campaign Name field, associate the response with a campaign.

## **Viewing an Opportunity Analysis (Response) Chart**

The Opportunity Analysis chart displays the total number of opportunities created for each campaign, based on the Source field in the opportunity record.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1** Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2** For each response to your campaign, verify that opportunities are created (if applicable).

### ***To create an opportunity for the campaign***

- 1** Select the response record in the Responses list.

- 2 In the Response form, click Create Opportunity.

An opportunity is created for the campaign and the campaign name is typed in the Source field for the opportunity.

## Viewing an Offer Analysis (Response) Chart

The Offer Analysis chart shows the total number of responses per offer based on the offer associated with the response.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Navigate to the Responses screen.
- 2 For each response to campaigns featuring the offer, make sure the correct offer is associated with the response by reviewing the response record's Offer field.

## Viewing an Offer Type Analysis (Response) Chart

The Offer Type Analysis chart displays the total number of responses for each offer type across all campaigns.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Confirm that each offer associated with the campaign has an offer type and offer name specified. For information about finding or completing these fields, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#).
- 2 Add the responses received during the campaign.  
The offer is identified for the response in the Offer Name field.
- 3 Generate the chart, using the procedure on ["Viewing Response Charts in Siebel Campaigns" on page 142](#).

## Viewing an Offer Type Analysis (Response) by Campaign Chart

The Offer Type Analysis by Campaign chart displays the total number of responses per offer type for each campaign. Each campaign can have many offers.

Perform the following tasks before generating the chart:

- 1 Confirm that each offer associated with the campaign has an offer type and offer name specified. For information about finding or completing these fields, see ["Creating an Offer" on page 52](#).

- 2 Confirm that the offers you want in the chart have been added to the campaign. For information about this procedure, see [“Associating Offers with a Campaign” on page 96](#).
- 3 Type responses during the campaign.
- 4 Generate the chart, using the procedure on [“Viewing Response Charts in Siebel Campaigns” on page 142](#).

## Viewing a Revenue Analysis (Response) Chart

The Revenue Analysis (Response) chart displays the total revenue for each campaign and the total number of opportunities for each campaign. The bar chart shows the revenue by campaign and the line graph shows the number of opportunities for each campaign.

Values for this chart are derived from the Revenue and Source fields in the Opportunity screen’s My Opportunities or All Opportunities list. The revenue number is derived from the sum of the Revenue fields in the Opportunity records, with the Source field set to the campaign name. Before generating this chart, make sure to complete these fields for opportunities used in this analysis.

## Viewing an Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis (Response) Chart

The Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart displays the average revenue for each campaign. For each opportunity created for the campaign, the revenue is added and the average is taken across opportunities created for the campaign.

Values for this chart are derived from the Revenue and Source fields in the Opportunity screen’s My Opportunities or All Opportunities list. The revenue number is derived from the average of the Revenue fields in the Opportunity records, with the Source field set to the campaign name. Before generating this chart, make sure to complete these fields for opportunities used in this analysis.



# 8

## List Management

The List Management module is available to users with a license for Siebel Marketing or Siebel Campaigns.

**NOTE:** The Siebel Campaigns module can be added to any base application, including Siebel Sales, Siebel Call Center, and Siebel PRM.

List Management allows you to create and manage lists of contacts and prospects within Siebel applications for use in marketing campaigns. A *list* in Siebel Marketing is a grouping of contact or prospect records in the Siebel database.

Contacts are customers already in the Siebel database. Prospects are potential customers that have yet to be screened, qualified, and promoted to contacts. By using this distinction, List Management allows you to eliminate prospects that do not qualify for promotion to contacts.

For example, you rent a magazine subscriber list containing 1,000 names and addresses. You want to contact these people, but because the list is rented, you may not add the records into your Siebel database as contacts unless they become customers generating revenue. You must be able to remove the names from your database when you return the list. Siebel List Management allows you to identify these names and addresses as prospects until they can be promoted to contacts.

To create, manage and maintain lists, perform the following tasks:

- [“Importing and Managing External Lists” on page 147](#). List Management allows you to import any external file of customer names and their associated contact and profile information.
- [“Creating and Managing Internal Lists” on page 159](#). You can use List Management to create and maintain lists created from records that already exist in your Siebel database.
- [“Promoting Prospects” on page 164](#).
- [“Viewing and Maintaining Lists” on page 168](#).
- [“Integrating List Management with D&B” on page 171](#). For customers who have licensed Siebel Dun & Bradstreet Integration Solution for Siebel Sales or another Siebel application, List Management allows you to use lists of prospects generated from the D&B source data in marketing campaigns.

## Importing and Managing External Lists

External lists are created by importing an external file into your Siebel application using the List Import utility. Imported lists can come from any source, as long as the list can be saved in one of the supported file formats, including Comma Separated, Tab Delimited, and Fixed Width. Common examples of list sources include rented or purchased lists from marketing bureaus, registration lists from trade shows or events, and output lists from other applications.

When you integrate Siebel Marketing or Siebel Campaigns with Siebel Data Quality (optional module), incoming records can be cleansed and matched against all existing contacts and prospects in the database. This additional process helps prevent creation of duplicate records for incoming prospects that are already contacts. For information about Siebel Data Quality, see *Siebel Data Quality Administration Guide*.

To import and manage external lists, perform the following tasks:

- [Prerequisites for Importing External Lists on page 148](#)
- [Importing External Lists on page 150](#)
- [Launching Import Requests and Tracking the Import Status on page 154](#)
- [Importing Campaign and Response Data on page 155](#)
- [Maintaining Attributes for List Records on page 156](#)
- [Mapping Fields on page 157](#)
- [Using List Import Formats on page 157](#)
- [Editing the List Import Format Settings on page 158](#)
- [Understanding Import Status and Error Messages on page 159](#)

## Prerequisites for Importing External Lists

Before importing a list, you need to perform the following tasks:

- [Verifying Status of Server Components and Tasks on page 148](#)
- [Verifying Data Quality Settings on page 149](#)
- [Validating the Structure of the Incoming Data on page 150](#)

## Verifying Status of Server Components and Tasks

Before importing a list, you need to verify that server components are enabled and that server tasks are running.

To enable server components and run tasks, you use the Administration - Server Configuration screen, Components view. For more information, see the *Siebel System Administration Guide*.

Make sure that the following server components are enabled and the following server tasks are running:

- List Import Service Manager: Enabled.

Clicking Launch Import in the List Import view tab of the List Management screen submits the import request. The actual import is performed by the List Manager server component on the Siebel Server.

- Server Request Processor: Running.
- Server Request Broker: Enabled or running.

To import a list, you must be connected to the Siebel Server. If the Siebel client cannot detect a running Siebel Server at the time you launch the import, you will receive a warning message. You can continue to submit the import request if you are sure that a Siebel Server will be available to handle the request later.

For the request to be queued, you must have a Siebel Gateway Name Server running in the background. The request will be routed through the gateway name server to a Siebel Server that has the List Import Service Manager server component enabled. If you do not have a gateway name server running, you will receive an error message saying "Unable to connect to gateway name server."

## Verifying Data Quality Settings

When you use the optional Data Quality module, you should verify your settings for the following server components before importing files:

- Data Quality Manager.
- List Import Service Manager.
- The object manager for the application in which your users promote prospects. For example, if you promote prospects using Call Center, you need to enable the Call Center Object Manager.

If you need to enable a server component, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide*. For more information about data quality configuration, see *Siebel Data Quality Administration Guide*.

- 1 Verify that these server components are set to Enabled.
- 2 Verify the component parameters for these server components are set for deduplication and data cleansing.
  - If you want to enable Data Matching, use the Components view in the Administration - Server Configuration screen and query for each of these server components. Click the Component Parameters view tab and query for the DeDuplication parameters. The DeDuplication Enable Flag should be set to TRUE.
  - If you want to enable Data Cleansing during import, query for the Data Cleansing parameters. The Data Cleansing Enable Flag should be set to TRUE.
- 3 Verify the matching threshold for List Import. The Match Threshold setting in the Data Quality Settings view of the Data Administration screen determines if an incoming name is considered a match with existing data. To specify a different threshold for List Import than the rest of the Data Quality module, navigate to the Components view of the Administration - Server Configuration screen and select the List Import Service Manager. Click Component Parameters and query for Dedup Threshold. Set the value to the match score threshold that you want to apply to the List Import utility.
 

**CAUTION:** Reboot Siebel Server before launching any import tasks so that new parameter values take effect.
- 4 Make sure that you set the Data Quality Settings in the Data Administration screen. You should generate and refresh the match keys for the existing contact and prospect data before importing any files.

## Validating the Structure of the Incoming Data

Some columns for a prospect correspond to an LOV (List of Values) or MLOV (Multilingual List of Values) field in the application. Be sure that your incoming data for these columns only use values from the LOV or MLOV. Any nonmatching values will automatically be set to NULL in the new prospect record.

The date format is set by the system settings for the machine on which the Siebel Server is running. For date fields, you should make sure you use the correct date format that corresponds to the locale settings for your Siebel environment.

## Importing External Lists

Lists that you import must be in text (.txt) format. When you import a list, List Management performs the following tasks:

- Loads the list names into the prospects table as individual records.
- Allows you to set the Matching Approach and Match Resolution values so that matches between incoming names and existing records can be handled according to your requirements.
- Allows you to save and reuse the file structure you develop during the import process by mapping the columns of the file.
- Controls the matching and address cleansing settings applied by Siebel Data Quality (optional module).

When the import is finished, the imported list and its associated contacts and prospects display in the List Contacts and Prospects list.

Before you can import an external list, you need to perform the following tasks:

- [Creating a Record for Importing an External List on page 150](#)
- [Selecting Matching Approach and Match Resolution on page 151](#)
- [Mapping External List Columns to Database Columns on page 153](#)

## Creating a Record for Importing an External List

Before you import an external list, you must create a record in your Siebel application that describes the list. This record tells the list import utility what file to import.

### ***To create a record for importing an external list***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 In the Lists list, create a new record and complete the fields.

Some fields are described in [Table 25](#).

### 3 Save the record.

Table 25. Fields Used to Create a List Record

Field	Comments
Data Type	List Import attempts to determine the format of the attached text file. Values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Fixed Width</li> <li>■ Comma Delimited. If the first row of data in the file contains a comma in any of the field values, it is recommended that you use tab delimited format to make sure that the correct file format is detected.</li> <li>■ Other Delimited. You can enter another character as the delimiter. If you attempt to add &gt;1 character, the value will be truncated.</li> <li>■ Tab Delimited</li> </ul>
List Name	(Required) This field is automatically generated when you add the record but you can modify the name.
List Type	Automatic. The possible values are Imported, Internal and D&B. If the file type is incorrectly detected during attachment, you can change it.
Source	The company from which the list was purchased. The company must be an account record in the Siebel database.

## Selecting Matching Approach and Match Resolution

You need to specify how you want duplicates handled before importing a list. If Siebel Data Quality is not installed or enabled, you can elect to use the exact match matching approach. If Data Quality is enabled, you can use Data Quality (intelligent matching) as the only matching approach or you can use Data Quality in conjunction with exact matching. For more information, see *Siebel Data Quality Administration Guide*. You can choose one of the following match resolutions:

- **Reject Import Record Mode.** In this mode, if a match is detected by the matching process, any incoming records matching existing contacts or prospects will not be added as new records in the database. Instead, the matching record which already exists in the database will be associated with the list. Each skipped record is recorded in the List Import log file for reference.

- **Overwrite Existing Record Mode.** In this mode, if a match is detected by the matching process, any incoming records can overwrite the existing match in the database. The columns that are allowed to be overwritten are set by the administrator for the List Import Format used by the file. To set which fields will be updated by an incoming record, navigate to the List Import Formats view in the List Management screen and select the Allow Field Updates check box. For reference, the List Import log file records all records that are updated as well as the old and new values for any updated fields.

If you use Overwrite Existing Record as the matching approach and an imported field value does not match any value on the bounded LOV, then the application will not change the field on the existing prospect record (the original value is preserved).

**NOTE:** Update Existing Duplicates Mode only updates prospect records. It will not update contact records.

- **Create Additional Record Mode.** In this mode, matches are detected but the incoming record is added to the database as new prospect without changing or overwriting the preexisting record. This mode allows the administrator to resolve any matches later on a case-by-case basis or by using the Siebel Data Quality module. To resolve duplicates, you can use the Duplicate Prospect Resolution view tab in the Data Quality view of the Data Administration screen. In resolve mode, all matches are recorded in the list import log file.

**NOTE:** If the matching process detects a matching contact, the match results will not appear in the Data Quality resolution views. This process can only display matching prospects for resolution.

### **To select a matching approach**

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 In the Lists list, select your list.  
Some fields are described in [Table 26](#).
- 3 Drill down on the list name.
- 4 Click the List Import view tab.
- 5 Select the Matching Approach to indicate what method of matching you want.

The choices are:

- **Exact Matching Only.** This option uses the fields marked as Exact Match Fields in the List Import Format and queries for any existing contacts or prospects that exactly match the values from the incoming record.
- **Intelligent Matching Only.** This option uses the data quality matching service to search for matching contacts or prospects.
- **Exact and Intelligent Match.** This option uses both exact matching and data quality matching. The option first searches for an exact match in the existing contacts and prospects, and then uses intelligent matching to search for matches if no exact match is found.
- **No matching.** This option disables matching for the import job.

- 6** In the Match Resolution drop-down list, select the action that you want to apply.  
For more details, see [“Selecting Matching Approach and Match Resolution” on page 151.](#)

Table 26. Fields Used for List Import View

Field	Comments
Additional Actions	Assign to Campaigns, Responses, or Campaigns and Responses. Used whenever the import file contains campaign history or response data about contacts and prospects. For more information, see <a href="#">“Importing Campaign and Response Data” on page 155.</a>
Cleanse Data During Import	A check box for which the default is off. When this flag is checked, incoming records are cleansed by Siebel Data Quality. If your company has not licensed Siebel Data Quality, this feature is not functional.
List Import Format	Indicates the saved column sequence for the file. Formats can be reused across lists. For more information, see <a href="#">“Using List Import Formats” on page 157.</a>
List Import Mode	For descriptions, see <a href="#">“Selecting Matching Approach and Match Resolution” on page 151.</a>

## Mapping External List Columns to Database Columns

Every column in the file you want to import must be mapped to an existing column in the prospects table in the Siebel Database or to an attribute created for this purpose. If you import response or campaign data, you can also map to response and campaign fields. For information about mapping attributes, see [“Adding Additional Attributes to a List” on page 156.](#)

**CAUTION:** Make sure that you map every column before launching the import.

### *To map list columns to database columns in the prospect table*

- 1** Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2** Drill down on the list name.
- 3** Click the List Import view tab.
- 4** Scroll down to the List Import Format list and map every column to an existing database column in the prospect table or to an attribute created for this purpose.
- 5** In the List Import Format list, save the format in one of the following ways:
  - a** The first time you save a format, click Save as New.  
Save as New allows you to retain the original format and save the modified format separately. All saved formats appear in the List Management screen’s List Imports Formats view tab.
  - b** Click Save to overwrite the original format.  
Use this save option if you make changes to the mappings and want to preserve them.

- 6 After you save the List Import Format, perform the following steps to verify the columns that will be used for matching and update.
  - a In the form in the List Import view, copy the name of the List Import Format in the List Import Format field.
  - b In the List Management link bar, click List Import Formats.
  - c Query for the name that you copied in the List Import view.
  - d In the lower list, you will see the columns that you mapped from the import file.
  - e In the Exact Match Column field, check each column from the list that you want to use for the exact match.

**NOTE:** These settings are only used when you have selected Exact match or Exact and intelligent match as the matching approach.
  - f In the Allow Field Updates field, check any fields that you want to allow to be overwritten when using the Overwrite existing record match resolution.

## Launching Import Requests and Tracking the Import Status

After creating a list record, identifying the Matching Approach and Match Resolution, and mapping list columns to database columns, you can import the list and track the status of the request.

### *To launch a list import request*

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 Drill down on the list name.
- 3 Click the List Import view tab.
- 4 In the List Import form, click Launch Import.

### Track the Status of an Import Request

After you submit the import request, the status field on the List Import list contains a value of In Progress. You can refresh this view to track the status of your request. When the import is finished, the status field contains a value of Successfully Completed.

There are three methods that can be used to view the status and details of an import job:

- During the import process, end users and administrators can review the List Import task status in the System Tasks view of the Administration - Marketing screen.
- Administrators can also view the log details for the List Import server task in the Components view in the Server Management Administration screen. In the Component Tasks list, select tasks for the List Import Service Manager.
- Administrators can also review List Import log files stored in the Siebel Server file system.

## Importing Campaign and Response Data

List Import can be used to import campaign and Response Data about contacts and prospects. For example, your company might run a campaign against a target list of contacts, but collect the responses in an external system or through an outside service company. You can import the response results from these sources and attribute the responses to the original campaign.

The List Import view provides the following additional actions that you can select in the Additional Actions field to include response and campaign data in the file:

- **Assign to Campaigns.** This action will add the contacts and prospects in the import file to the campaign included in the file. This action will not create any response data.
- **Assign to Responses.** This action will create response records for all the contacts or prospects in the list. The action will not add, delete, or modify the set of contacts and prospects already associated with the campaign.
- **Assign to Campaigns/Responses.** This action will take contacts and prospects records from the import file, add them to the campaign, and create responses for them.

Campaign and response data will not be created unless you select one of these additional actions, even if you mapped response or campaign fields. If you do not select an additional action, the import utility ignores response and campaign columns and only creates a list of contacts and prospects.

## Mapping Response and Campaign Fields

The List Import view includes the following response and campaign fields for mapping import data:

**Response fields.** Fields are Response Description (required), Response Type (required), Response Method, Response Status, Response Date, Response Score, Offer Name (required), Offer Code, and Offer Language.

**Campaign fields.** Fields are Campaign Name (required) and Campaign Source Code.

When mapping, response and campaign fields, be sure to map all the fields required to create a response in the application. The import provides some default values if the user does not include all the required fields.

- If you do not specify Offer Name, the response defaults to the primary offer for the campaign.
- If you do not specify Response Type, the type defaults to Unclassified Response.
- If you do not specify Response Description, the type defaults to Imported Response.

If you enable the response business service that performs automatic lookups for Campaign Source Code and Offer Code, you can map the Campaign Source Code and Offer Code fields as an alternative to Campaign Name and Offer Name. In this case, the import utility performs the lookup and defaults to the related Campaign Name and Offer Name automatically. For more information, see ["Using Response Management" on page 116](#).

**NOTE:** The Campaign Source Code field in the List Import mappings indicates the source code value assigned individually to each Campaign Contact and Prospect. It does not refer to the Source Code field in the Campaign record (the field displayed on the Campaign form).

## Maintaining Attributes for List Records

Prospects have a predefined set of information fields standard in the application. These are the standard types of information about your prospects that normally include address, phone number, email address, and so on. These values are defined in Siebel Tools under the Prospect Business Component.

If the list you want to import has attributes not contained in the standard Siebel prospect table, you can create additional attributes to capture the data. After they are created, additional attributes appear on the list of available columns that can be mapped in the List Import view.

An additional attribute can contain any type of information, as long as it can be contained in a single field and can relate directly to the prospect record. For example, additional attributes might include hobbies, special contact information (for example, pager #), product interests, survey responses, or demographic attributes.

## Creating Additional Attributes for List Records

In order to make an additional attribute available during list mapping, you must first make sure your desired attribute exists and then associate the attribute with the specific list.

### ***To create additional attributes***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Additional Attributes view.
- 2 In the Additional Attributes list, create a new record.
- 3 In the Additional Attribute field, type the name of the new attribute.  
You can create the overall attribute type, such as Hobby or Pager #.
- 4 Type a description for the additional attribute, if needed.

## Adding Additional Attributes to a List

After you create the additional attributes needed to capture all the data in the list you want to import, you must add them to your specific prospect list and map them to one of the List Import columns.

### ***To add additional attributes to a list***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 Drill down on the list name.
- 3 Click the List Additional Attributes view tab.
- 4 In the List Additional Attributes list, create a new record.
- 5 In the Pick Additional Attribute dialog box, select the attribute, and click OK.

## Mapping Fields

After you import a list, you must map the fields in the imported list to the fields in the Prospect Business Component. When you do this mapping, the values in the list fields are transferred accurately into the correct fields in the prospect records.

When there is a dedicated column in the prospect table, you should map fields in the imported list to existing fields in the prospects record. Try to avoid mapping fields to additional attribute columns in the database extension table. When a value is stored in the main Prospect table, there is more flexibility to configure the location where the promoted field value should be mapped on the Contact record in the promotion map in the repository. Additional Attribute values can only be promoted to Contact Category data.

### ***To map fields when importing a list***

- 1** Navigate to the List Management screen
- 2** In the List Management link bar, click Additional Attributes.
- 3** Query for each attribute you want to use and verify that they exist.
- 4** In the List Management link bar, click Lists.
- 5** Drill down on the list name and click the List Additional Attributes view tab.
- 6** To associate attributes with the list, in the attributes list, click New.
- 7** In the Pick Additional Attribute dialog box, perform the following steps:
  - a** To create new attributes, click New, and in the attributes list, type a name and description.
  - b** To associate predefined attributes to the list, select an attribute, and click OK.
- 8** Associate the attributes with the list using the List Additional Attributes tab.
- 9** Navigate to the List Import view tab. At the top of each column in the external list, select the appropriate field or attribute to which the column should be mapped.
- 10** Click Save as New to save the List Import Format.
- 11** At the top of each column in the external list, select the appropriate prospects record attribute to which the column should be mapped.
- 12** Create additional attributes for columns in your list which have no corresponding prospect field.

## Using List Import Formats

Before you import a file, you must save the List Import Format (the sequence of columns that correspond to your file). The list format name consists of the list name followed by the saved date/time stamp. For example, My Target List 09/1/2003 12:30:15pm. You can rename the list by navigating to the List Import Formats view and editing the record in the list. For more information, see ["Mapping External List Columns to Database Columns"](#) on page 153.

### **To apply an existing List Import Format to your list**

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen.
- 2 Drill down on the list name.
- 3 Click the List Import view tab.
- 4 In the List Import Formats field, click the select button.
- 5 In the List Import Formats dialog box, select the format you wish to use. If necessary, perform a query to locate the format.

**NOTE:** You may not be able to apply an existing format to a fixed width file if the data was originally created for comma separated or tab delimited file. For CSV or tab delimited files, the column width value defaults to 20, and this value may not match the width of the fixed width file that is being used.

## **Editing the List Import Format Settings**

You can administer the precise settings associated with your list import format. If the Import Format is to be used in Overwrite Existing Record match resolution, you can specify which columns are allowed to be overwritten in the database. You can see which columns are set to be overwritten by looking at the Allow Field Updates column in the lower list. If the column is checked, that field will be overwritten in any existing prospect record that matches the incoming record. By default, all columns are unchecked, so that no existing information can be overwritten without the administrator's consent.

If you are using Exact Match or Exact and Intelligent Match as the matching approach, you need to specify the columns that should be used to perform the exact match query. In the List Import Mappings list, check the box in the Exact Match Column column for each list field that you want to use in the exact match query.

For files with a fixed width file type, the server will automatically detect the column width and display the width in the List Import Formats view. To see the column width settings, from the visibility filter, select List Import Formats and in the List Import Formats list, select the list that relates to your list. If the List Import Format was originally created from a comma separated or tab delimited file, the value will default to 20, although the width will not have any effect during the import task.

**NOTE:** Columns mapped to Additional Attributes cannot be updated in Update Mode. If you check Allow Field Updates for this column in the List Import Formats view, the system will ignore the setting.

List Import can load a text file in one of three types: comma separated, tab delimited, or fixed width. For files with a fixed-width data type, you can specify the width of each column. The default width is 20. In the bottom list, you can see the column sequence that you have defined in the List Import list. Type the width in the Width field.

## Understanding Import Status and Error Messages

When you launch an import task, the List Import list will display the status of the task. The status may show any of the following messages: Submitted Import Request, In Progress, Successfully Complete, Error, or Completed with Errors.

You can view the detailed results of the List Import task by reviewing the log file from the Siebel Server. The log file contains the following information:

- The status of the file import task (in progress, completed, or error)
- The number of incoming records
- The number of records imported
- Notification of any record that experienced an error
- Notification of any record that detected a duplicate contact or prospect
- Notification of any record that was updated (update mode only)
- Notification of any response record or associated campaign that experienced an error

### ***To view the system task for the List Import job***

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Marketing screen > System Tasks view.
- 2 Query for tasks in which the Process Name is List Import and the User is the user who submitted the import job.
- 3 Sort the tasks by date and find the task for your list import job.  
To verify that the task is for the correct file, read the logging messages in the lower list.
- 4 In the System Tasks list, click Refresh.

### ***To view the log file for an import task***

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Server Management screen.
- 2 In the Component list, query for List Import Service Manager in the Name field.
- 3 Scroll down to the Component Tasks view tab.  
You will see component tasks for the import. There may be more than one task for the import job, based on the Max Tasks parameter for the server component.
- 4 In the Component Tasks list, drill down on the Task field to view the Task Information Log.

## Creating and Managing Internal Lists

List Management allows you to create lists of contact and prospect records stored within your Siebel applications. Internal lists are created within the List Management module by querying existing contact or prospect records in the database. After you have created these lists, you can reuse the list any number of times for campaigns. Lists are used by Siebel Marketing and Siebel Campaigns.

To create and manage internal lists, perform the following tasks:

- [Using Prospect Lists in Siebel Marketing on page 160](#)
- [Creating Internal Lists on page 161](#)
- [Adding to Internal Lists on page 162](#)
- [Creating Lists of Prospects Using Additional Attributes on page 163](#)

## Using Prospect Lists in Siebel Marketing

Marketing campaigns can include prospects in a using one of the following approaches:

- Associating an internal list of prospects with the campaign.
- Associating a segment from the Marketing segmentation module where the campaign load list format is configured to load the Marketing Prospect integration object.

### ***To associate an internal list with a campaign***

- 1 Navigate to the Campaigns screen > Campaign List view.
- 2 Drill down on the campaign Name.
- 3 Click the Design tab.
- 4 In the Design link bar, click Segments/Lists.
- 5 Click Add List to associate an internal list.  
Repeat [Step 5](#) if you want to associate any more lists.
- 6 After all the desired lists are associated, select the Menu on the upper campaign form and select Load Campaign to associate all the members of the list to the campaign.
- 7 Pick a time and date for the load request, and click OK.

Marketing campaigns can include prospects in a using one of the following approaches:

- Associating an internal list of prospects with the campaign.
- Associating a segment from the Marketing segmentation module where the campaign load list format is configured to load the Marketing Prospect integration object.

### ***To associate a Segment of prospects with a campaign***

- 1 In the Marketing Module, create a segment. Make sure that the Campaign Load List Format for the segment is configured to load data into the Marketing Prospect integration object.
- 2 Navigate to the Campaigns screen > Campaign List view.
- 3 Drill down on the campaign Name.
- 4 Click the Design tab.
- 5 In the Design link bar, click Segments/Lists.

- 6 Click Add Segment to associate the segment.  
If the segment has never been used in a campaign previously, click Choose a new segment, and select the segment from the folder location where you saved it.
- 7 Repeat [Step 6](#) if you want to associate any more segments.
- 8 After all the desired segments are associated, select the Menu on the upper campaign form, and select Load Campaign to associate all the members of the segment to the campaign.
- 9 Pick a time and date for the load request, and click OK.

[Table 27](#) describes how prospects and contacts can be used in segments associated with campaigns.

Table 27. Scenarios for Using Segments of Contacts and Prospects in Campaigns

Scenario	Data Source	Integration Object	Comments
Segment contains only contacts.	Siebel OLAP or Siebel OLTP	Marketing Contact	Fully supported. All contacts exist in the Siebel transactional database, so data is inserted only into the S_CAMP_CON table.
Segment contains only contacts.	Non-Siebel database	Marketing Contact	Fully supported. New contacts and accounts (if mapped) are created in the Siebel transactional database.
Segment contains only prospects.	Siebel OLAP or Siebel OLTP	Marketing Person	Fully supported. All prospects exist in the Siebel transactional database, so data is inserted only into S_CAMP_CON.
Segment contains only prospects.	Non-Siebel database	Marketing Prospect	Fully supported. New prospects are created in the Siebel transactional database.
Segment contains contacts and prospects.	Siebel OLAP or Siebel OLTP	Marketing Person	Fully supported. All contacts and prospects exist in the Siebel transactional database, so data is inserted only into S_CAMP_CON and S_DD_USER_KEY tables.
Segment contains contacts and prospects.	Non-Siebel database		Currently not supported.

## Creating Internal Lists

The contacts or prospects you target for each campaign will vary depending on the campaign objective. For example, you might want to select all the contacts who have a certain job title or live in a specific ZIP or Postal code. In another campaign, you might want to combine sets of contacts or prospects that were selected by several different criteria into a single list.

You create an internal list of contacts or prospects in the List Management screen using the Contacts or Prospects view. You can also use these views to add contacts or prospects to existing lists.

**NOTE:** To create an internal list, your employee login must have a responsibility associated with it that includes the List Management views.

You can reuse lists in any number of campaigns or marketing programs.

### ***To create an internal list of contacts or prospects***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Contacts or Prospects view.
- 2 In the Contacts or Prospects list, select the individuals that you would like to include, or perform a query to find this information.
- 3 After you receive the results of your query, you can select any number of the records for inclusion in the list.
- 4 With the desired records highlighted, click Add to List.
- 5 In the Pick List dialog box, click Create New List.
- 6 In the second Pick List dialog box, type a name for the list, and click OK.
- 7 In the Pick List dialog box, select the list you created and click OK.
- 8 To see the new list, in the List Management link bar, click Lists.

**NOTE:** The list type is defaulted to Internal. You can rename the list to give it a more appropriate reference name or type at any time.

## **Adding to Internal Lists**

Adding to an existing internal list is similar to creating a new internal list. You can use Add to List to attach prospects to a list of type Internal, D&B, or Imported. You can attach prospects from the All Prospects list or the Prospects by Attribute list.

### ***To add contacts or prospects to an internal list***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Contacts or Prospects view.
- 2 In the Contacts or Prospects list, select the individuals that you would like to include or perform a query to find this information.  
  
After you receive the results of your query, you can select any number of the records for inclusion in the list.
- 3 With the selected records highlighted, click Add to List.
- 4 In the Pick List dialog box, select the appropriate list, and click OK.
- 5 To see the new list, in the List Management link bar, click Lists.
- 6 Select the appropriate list, and drill down on the list name.

- 7 Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab to verify that your selected contacts or prospects have been added.

## Creating Lists of Prospects Using Additional Attributes

You can create lists of prospects by querying the additional attribute data for all prospects. For example, you might create an additional attribute for hobby and then record these values for many of your prospects. For a campaign, you might want to create a list of prospects with certain hobbies, such as sailing or painting.

You can create a list of prospects by using the Prospects by Attribute list. In this list, the New Internal List and Add to List functions are also available. Simply query the list of all prospects using the appropriate attribute and attribute value. Then, highlight the desired records and either create a new list or add to an existing list.

Due to the many-to-many relationship between prospects and attributes, you cannot have multiple combinations of attributes and values in a single query. If you wish to create of a list that combines queries, for example Hobby = Skiing AND Preferred Language = Spanish, perform separate queries, and use the Add to List function to combine the results.

### ***To create an internal list of prospects using attributes***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Prospects by Attribute view.
- 2 In the Prospects by Attribute list, select one or more prospects that you would like to include in your internal list.
- 3 With the desired records highlighted, click Add to List.
- 4 In the Pick List dialog box, click Create New List.
- 5 In the second Pick List dialog box, type a name for the list, and click Save.
- 6 In the Pick List dialog box, select the list you created, and click OK.
- 7 To see the new list, in the List Management link bar, click Lists.

### ***To add to an internal list using prospect attributes***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Prospects by Attribute view.
- 2 In the Prospects by Attribute list, select the prospects that you would like to include in your internal list, or perform a query if necessary.

After you receive the results of your query, you can select any number of the records for inclusion in the list.

- 3 With your desired records highlighted, click Add to List.
- 4 In the Pick List dialog box, select the appropriate list, and click OK.
- 5 To see the new list, in the List Management link bar, click Lists.
- 6 Select the appropriate list, and drill down on the list name.

- 7 Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab to verify that your selected contacts or prospects have been added.

## Creating and Managing Subscription Lists

You can use lists in List Management to serve as subscription lists for Email campaigns. A *subscription list* is a set of contacts or prospects that have indicated that they wish to receive communications about a certain topic. After creating a subscription list, you can associate the list with an Email Offer. Any responses to Subscribe or Unsubscribe from List will automatically add and remove members from this list.

Before you can create a subscription list, create an internal list of contacts, prospects, or both using one of the following methods:

- The Add to List button in the List Management views
- The Create Target List feature (Siebel Industry Applications only)
- EIM or other custom configuration

### **To create a subscription list:**

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 Find the list you created.
- 3 Change the Type to Subscription.

### **To associate the subscription to an email offer:**

- 1 Navigate to the Offers screen > Email Offers view.
- 2 Query for the Email Offer with which you want to associate the list.
- 3 Drill down on the offer name, and select the Advanced tab.
- 4 In the form, select the list name using the Subscription List field.

## Promoting Prospects

Prospects are prospective contacts, people who have the potential to become customers or to be involved in a business activity in some other way. Prospects are candidates for promotion to a contact, an account, or an opportunity. In addition, you can configure the promotion behavior by modifying the promotion map in Siebel Tools. In Siebel Marketing, you can promote prospects from the List Management screen. In other Siebel eBusiness applications, you can promote prospects in views located in the List Management and Campaigns screens.

To promote prospects, perform the following tasks:

- [Promoting a Prospect to a Contact on page 165](#)

- [Promoting a Prospect's Response to an Opportunity on page 167](#)
- [Modifying the Promotion Map on page 167](#)

## Promoting a Prospect to a Contact

When a prospect satisfies a set of screening criteria, he or she can be promoted to become a contact. The new contact record contains the same name and address information as the prospect record. The additional attribute data associated with the prospect is automatically promoted to categories and category values for the new contact.

**NOTE:** You can have duplicate contacts in the same account. For example, duplicate contacts from different companies might belong to the same account.

When a prospect is promoted, the application checks for the following items:

- List Management confirms whether Data Quality deduplication is enabled. If so, the promotion will match the prospect against all existing contacts. If a match is found, a pop-up window appears showing all the matching contacts. The user can then pick or ignore the matches and proceed with the promotion.
  - If the user chooses an existing contact from the pop-up window, the prospect record will be removed and its associations with any campaigns, lists, or responses will be linked to the selected contact.
  - If the user ignores all the matches in the Pop-up Window, the promotion continues as if no match was detected.
- If Data Quality finds no matching contact or Data Quality is not enabled, the promotion checks whether the combination of the Account Name and Account site fields matches an existing account record.
- If the combination of the Account Name and Account Site fields match an existing account record, one of the following occurs:
  - If the account name is empty but an account site is specified, an account will be created using the prospects last name as the Account Name value.
  - If the account name exists but the account site is empty, the promotion compares with existing accounts that have the same Account Name and Account Site. If an identical account exists, the promotion will link the contact to the existing account. For the prospect address fields, either an update or an insert on the Account Address will be performed, based on the Address Name (the user key for Business Address). If there is not a match with an existing account, a new account will be created and the prospect personal address becomes the account address.
  - If no account location or account name is specified, an account will not be created or associated with the promoted prospect. The prospect personal address becomes the contact personal address.

## Promoting Multiple Prospects

You can promote multiple prospects using the Promote Many button in some views in the List Management screen. This action promotes any prospects for which Data Quality does not find any matches.

**CAUTION:** Promotion is only intended for promoting relatively small numbers of prospects at one time (fewer than 100). If you select more prospects, the process could take many minutes to complete.

Prospects that have at least one matching contact will not be promoted when you click Promote Many. If you do not enable Data Quality, selected prospects will be promoted to contacts.

When a prospect is promoted, a contact record is created with matching field information, and the prospect is removed from the list of all prospects.

### ***To promote a prospect using the Prospects More Info view***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Prospects view.
- 2 Use one of the following methods to promote prospects:
  - In the Prospects list, select a prospect record, and click Promote.
  - To promote multiple prospects, select the prospect records that you want to promote, and click Promote Many.

### ***To promote a prospect using the views in the List Management screen***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 Drill down on the list name.
- 3 Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab.
- 4 Use one of the following methods to promote prospects:
  - In the Contacts and Prospects list, select a prospect record, and click Promote.
  - To promote multiple prospects, select the prospect records that you want to promote, and click Promote Many.

### ***To promote a prospect to an opportunity using views in the Campaigns screen***

- 1 In Navigate to the Campaigns screen.
- 2 In the Campaigns list, select a campaign.
- 3 Click the Overview view tab.
- 4 In the Overview list, select a prospect record and click Create Opportunity.

## Promoting a Prospect's Response to an Opportunity

A prospect that responds to a campaign offer can be promoted by promoting the response to an opportunity in the Responses screen. For more information, see ["Promoting a Response to an Opportunity" on page 123](#).

## Modifying the Promotion Map

List Management provides a default path for information to move from the prospect record to the contact record during promotion. Prebuilt maps specify where in the contact record prospect fields should be copied when a prospect is promoted. List Management provides three prebuilt maps for moving prospect information during promotion. Refer to [Table 28](#).

Table 28. Prospect Information

Map Name	Information Promoted	Source Business Component	Destination Business Component
LM Contact Map	Contact related information such as First Name, Email Address, and Job Title	List Mgmt Prospective Contact	Contact
LM Account Map	Account related information such as Annual Revenue and Line of Business	List Mgmt Prospective Contact	List Mgmt Account
LM Business Address Map	Business Address information such as City, Country, and Postal Code	List Mgmt Prospective Contact	Business Address

Using Siebel Tools, you can redirect any of these prospect fields to a field associated with another business component. For example, you may decide that you do not want to use the Alias field for the prospect and would like it to hold some other information such as a Back Office Account ID. You may also want to promote that ID to populate a specific field on the contact record, possibly an extension column added to your implementation. To view or change the promotion map, in Siebel Tools, navigate to Business Components > List Mgmt Prospective Contact > Business Component User Properties.

You can see the destination business component by looking under Business Component User Properties for the List Mgmt Prospective Contact and searching for the Map Name in the Name column. The path for the map will be displayed as Destination Business Component: Source Business Component. For example, Contact: List Mgmt Prospective Contact.

In this case, all three default maps use the List Mgmt Prospective Contact business component as the source.

To modify the promotion map, you can change a user property in the map to promote the information to a different field in the Destination Business Component for the map.

Alternatively, if you wish to promote user properties to a destination business component other than the three default maps, you might create a new map for those user properties.

**NOTE:** Creating promotion mappings to promote data into a contact's multivalue field is not supported.

### Modifying Map Entries

To insert or modify a map entry, first determine which map to use for a given set of source and destination fields. Then add an entry using the following syntax:

Name Column: [MAP NAME]: [DESTINATION FIELD]

Value Column: [SOURCE FIELD]

- **Map Name.** The name of the map specified under the corresponding row in the Business Component User Properties.
- **Destination Field.** Field in the Destination Business Component to receive source data. The Destination Business Component is map specific, but configurable.
- **Source Field.** Field in the Source Business Component from which to extract data. Source Business Component is map specific, but configurable.

Each map only works with a specific source and destination Business Component. However, users can make copies of the Business Components and rename them.

To modify the source and destination Business Components of these mappings, the user must modify the following Business Component User Prop:

Name Column: [Map Name]

Value Column: [Destination Business Component]:[Source Business Component]

## Viewing and Maintaining Lists

A list in Siebel Marketing is a group of contact or prospect records in the Siebel database. The list file name is assigned by Siebel Marketing in the following format:

{P or L}/[campaign source code][wave code]\_[unique identifier].txt

**NOTE:** P stands for Preview and L stands for List.

If there is a need to influence the list's file name, you can change the Campaign Source Code by modifying the Source Code Field in the Campaigns screen's All Campaigns across Organizations view or change the campaign's Wave Code in the Campaigns screen's Waves view tab.

List Management contains several features for helping you manage your list data.

- [Viewing Lists of Contacts or Prospects on page 169](#)
- [Deactivating Lists on page 170](#)

- [Deleting Lists on page 170](#)
- [Removing Prospects from Lists on page 170](#)
- [Removing Contacts from Lists on page 171](#)

## Viewing Lists of Contacts or Prospects

You can view the list members and details about them in several ways. If you know the name of the list, you can start at the Lists view. If you want to see what other lists a contact or prospect may be on, you can also start at the Contacts or Prospects List view.

### ***To view a contact or prospect list from the Lists view***

- 1** Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2** In the Lists list, select the list record.
- 3** Drill down on the list name.
- 4** Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab.

The List Member view shows all of the contacts or prospects on the list you selected. If the Contact column is checked, the person is a contact. In addition, the person's name appears either in the Contact Last Name or Prospect Last Name column to further identify if the person is a contact or prospect.

- 5** Click the Last Name, and one of the following occurs:
  - If you clicked a Contact name, the Contact Detail view appears, with the Activity view tab selected.
  - If you clicked a Prospect name, the List Mgmt All Prospective Contacts view appears, with More Info view tab selected.

### ***To view contact or prospect information from the Contacts or Prospects List view***

- 1** Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2** From the List Management link bar, click Contacts or Prospects.

Depending on which you chose, the Prospect List view or Contact List view appears.
- 3** Select the record of the Contact or Prospect you are interested in.
- 4** Click the Last Name, and one of the following occurs:
  - If you clicked a Contact name, the Contact Detail view appears, with the Activity view tab selected.
  - If you clicked a Prospect name, the Prospective Contact Market Segment view appears, with the Prospect Additional Attributes view tab selected.

## Deactivating Lists

Many times lists are acquired from outside sources such as other companies, Web sites, and events such as seminars and trade shows. Because this data typically represents prospective customers who are not active customers, you may wish to deactivate any remaining prospects who have not been promoted to contacts. Additionally, lists can be generated by different users for a specific campaign or business situation, so you may want to keep lists active only for a specified period of time.

**NOTE:** To deactivate a list, change the values in the Status and Expiration Dates fields. navigate to the List Management screen and select the Lists view. In the Lists list, select the list you want to deactivate. In the Lists form, change the status to Inactive or set the expiration date. The expiration date is an information-only field and does not affect your use of the list.

## Deleting Lists

To delete a list, navigate to the Lists view of the List Management screen and select your list from the Lists list. Click the menu button and select Delete Record. This action will delete the list as well as the association with any contact or prospect records.

**NOTE:** Deleting a list does not delete the contact or prospect records, because those names may also be used on other lists.

## Removing Prospects from Lists

A prospect cannot be removed from a list using the List Contacts and Prospects view, because the prospect may appear on more than one list. You have more control over individual prospect lists when you remove the association between the prospect record and its list. If you remove all list associations for a prospect, the prospect record is deleted.

### ***To remove a Prospect from a list***

- 1** Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2** Drill down on the list name.
- 3** Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab.
- 4** In the List Contacts and Prospects list, select the record you wish to remove, and drill down on the first or last name of the prospect.
- 5** Click the Prospect Lists tab.
- 6** In the Prospect Lists list, select and delete the list or lists from which you wish to remove the prospect.

If you select and delete all of the lists, the prospect record is also deleted.

You can also purge all prospects from a list in a single step.

### ***To purge all prospects from a list***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 In the Lists list, select the list record.
- 3 In the lower form, click Purge List.
- 4 When the confirmation dialog appears, click OK and then click OK again to submit the request.  
This action will remove all prospects where the Promoted By and Promoted Date are NULL (indicating they have never been promoted).
- 5 To confirm the prospects were deleted, drill on the name of the list in the upper list applet, and go to the List Contacts and Prospects view tab.

## **Removing Contacts from Lists**

Contacts can be removed from all lists, but the Contact record remains in the database.

### ***To remove a Contact from a list***

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 Drill down on the list name.
- 3 Click the List Contacts and Prospects view tab.
- 4 In the List Contacts and Prospects list, delete the record you wish to remove from the list.

## **Integrating List Management with D&B**

List Management can be used in conjunction with Siebel Dun & Bradstreet Integration Solution to generate lists of prospects from the D&B dataset. Within Siebel Dun & Bradstreet Integration Solution, the user can perform a query on D&B accounts and generate a list of prospects from the results of the query. These prospects can then be targeted in a campaign and promoted to active contacts.

List Management uses the D&B D-U-N-S number to provide data consistency throughout this process. The D-U-N-S number is associated with all prospects derived from the D&B data. After a D&B prospect is promoted to a contact, the D-U-N-S number is used by the D&B update routine to continually refresh the data for those new contacts and their associated account information.

To use List Management with Siebel Dun & Bradstreet Integration Solution, perform the following tasks:

- [Viewing Account Data for a D&B Prospect on page 172](#)
- [Promoting a D&B Prospect on page 172](#)

## Viewing Account Data for a D&B Prospect

The account related to a D&B prospect may already exist as a Siebel account. You can use the following procedure to view account information after you promote an account from a D&B account to a Siebel account.

### **To view the account information for a D&B prospect**

- 1 Navigate to the List Management screen > Lists view.
- 2 In the Lists list, drill down on the D&B list name.
- 3 In the List Contacts and Prospects list, drill down on the name in the Prospect Last Name field.

**NOTE:** Make sure you select the Prospect Last Name and not the Contact Last Name.

- 4 Click the More Info view tab.
- 5 In the Prospects list, drill down on the Matched Account Name.

The field will be blank if there is no matching account name.

## Promoting a D&B Prospect

When you promote a D&B prospect to a contact, promotion checks to see if a Siebel account with the same D-U-N-S number exists and the following actions occur:

- If a Siebel account exists with that D-U-N-S number, the promotion proceeds according to the standard promotion process in ["Promoting a Prospect to a Contact" on page 165](#). After the promotion, any other prospects from that same D&B account are removed from the list.
- If there is no Siebel account with that D-U-N-S number, the application invokes the D&B account promotion, which then promotes the account and all its associated contacts, industry information, and other information. For more information, see the chapter about D&B in *Applications Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** List Management will not promote a prospect with an invalid D-U-N-S number. A D-U-N-S number is considered invalid if it is not contained in the D&B Accounts table.

# 9

## Setting Up and Using Web Marketing

Siebel Web Marketing is an optional Siebel Marketing module that provides you with the tools and templates to manage and execute Web-based marketing. It provides the Web site visitor a method of viewing a Web offer, downloading literature, and using preconfigured Web response forms to request more information or ask you to contact them by telephone.

You can modify the look and feel of Web Marketing to match your existing Web site.

Siebel Web Marketing Web sites can be deployed in more than one language. For information about deploying Siebel applications in a multilingual environment, see *Global Deployment Guide*.

This chapter contains the following topics:

- [About Web Marketing Web Site Visitors on page 173](#)
- [Setting Up Siebel Web Marketing on page 175](#)
- [About the Siebel Web Marketing Web Site on page 180](#)
- [Using the Web Marketing Offers Page on page 180](#)
- [Using the Web Marketing Information Page on page 183](#)

### About Web Marketing Web Site Visitors

A Web site visitor can navigate to the Web Marketing home page by typing the URL or by clicking a hyperlink on another Web page. At this point, the user is an anonymous visitor and can choose to register, log in (with an existing user name and password), or continue to navigate anonymously. When the anonymous visitor arrives at the Web Marketing home page, the default campaign offers and the details for the first offer in the Featured Offers list appear. If the visitor registers or logs in, the visitor sees other campaign offers for which he or she is eligible. For more information about default offers and default campaigns, see the description of featured offers in ["Using the Web Marketing Offers Page" on page 180](#).

If a contact logs in using the contact's user ID and password, any responses generated by this customer are tagged with the customer's account ID and with the associated campaign ID. For information about setting up users, see ["Setting Up Default Responsibilities and Users for Web Marketing" on page 176](#).

Web site visitors can also navigate to the Web Marketing site by clicking an embedded URL from within an email offer. Only contacts or prospects receive these offers. When an email contact or email prospect clicks an embedded URL, the Web Offer page for this offer appears. Any responses to the offer from this contact or prospect are tagged with the associated campaign ID and offer ID, allowing marketers to track response rates for specific campaigns. For a list of responses that are captured, see ["Response Management" on page 179](#).

Visitors access the Web Marketing home page in the following ways:

- **Anonymous visitor.** Any visitor can type the Web Marketing URL into a Web browser and navigate to your Web Marketing home page. This visitor sees no personalized Welcome message and responses are not captured when the visitor clicks a Recommended Product link or downloads literature. An anonymous visitor can create a product information or call response by clicking the Send Product Information or Request a Call link in the Offers page or Information page. The profile information that the anonymous visitor types creates a prospect record that is associated with the responses.

- **Email contact.** When a contact clicks an embedded link in an email, your Web Marketing home page appears and the Contact Id is set in an anonymous session. At this point, the email contact is not logged in. The contact must be a registered contact and must log in to access profile information in the My Accounts link or to perform any other tasks that require the contact to be a registered contact. The email contact can generate responses by clicking a Recommended Product link, downloading literature, or requesting product information or a telephone call.

In the Web Marketing home page, the contact can log in. After logging in, the email contact becomes a logged-in contact.

If an email contact clicks the My Accounts link during an anonymous session, the User Login (user registration) view appears, requiring the anonymous visitor to log in before continuing.

- **Email prospect.** When a prospect clicks an embedded link in an email, your Web Marketing home page appears, and the Prospect Id is set in an anonymous session. At this point, the email prospect is not logged in. The prospect must become a registered contact and must log in to access profile information in the My Accounts link or to perform any other tasks that require the prospect to be a registered contact. The email prospect can generate responses by clicking a Recommended Product link, downloading literature, or requesting product information or a telephone call.

In the Web Marketing home page, the email prospect must register as a new contact before the prospect can log in. In the User Login applet, the email prospect can type a user ID and password or click the New User link to register as a new contact and obtain a user ID and password.

In the User Login view, the User Login (user registration) view appears, requiring the anonymous visitor to log in or to register as a new user before continuing. When registration is complete, the prospect is converted to a new logged-in contact. However, the original email prospect's responses are not associated with the new contact record. After logging in, the email prospect becomes a logged-in contact.

**NOTE:** If an email prospect clicks the My Accounts link during an anonymous session, the User Login (user registration) view appears, requiring the anonymous visitor to log in or to register as a new user before continuing.

- **Logged-in contact.** This contact has access to the My Account link and can perform all other tasks that a registered contact is eligible to perform. The logged-in contact can generate responses by clicking a Recommended Product link, downloading literature, or by requesting product information or a telephone call. These responses are associated with the contact record in the database.

## Setting Up Siebel Web Marketing

This section describes how to set up Siebel Web Marketing. It includes information about customizing the user interface, controlling user access, setting up responsibilities, and managing default campaigns and offers.

Before Siebel Web Marketing can be used, certain setup tasks must be performed. These include:

- [Installing Web Marketing on page 175](#)
- [Controlling User Access to the Web Marketing Web Site on page 175](#)
- [Setting Up Default Responsibilities and Users for Web Marketing on page 176](#)
- [Setting Up a Default Campaign and Default Offer on page 177](#)
- [Using Siebel Personalization with Web Marketing on page 177](#)
- [Customizing the Web Marketing User Interface on page 177](#)

## Installing Web Marketing

Before you install and use Web Marketing, you must install the following:

- **Siebel Web Engine and related components.** To deploy information on the Web and customer applications, you must install the Siebel Web Engine and the components on which it depends. These include a Web server, Siebel Gateway Name Server, and Siebel Server. For information about installing Siebel components, see the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.
- **Siebel Applications.** To perform administrative tasks such as server administration, creating Web offers, and managing marketing activities, you must install a Siebel employee application such as Siebel eSales and add the Siebel Web Marketing license key. For information about installing your Siebel employee application, see the appropriate administration guide, for example, *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

Siebel Web Marketing is an add-on module to Siebel Marketing. Siebel Web Marketing requires the Web Marketing Object Manager component, which is part of the Marketing Component Group. For information about installing Siebel Marketing, see *Siebel Marketing Installation and Administration Guide* and the Siebel Server installation guide for the operating system you are using.

## Controlling User Access to the Web Marketing Web Site

You might want to perform some of the following tasks to control user access in your Siebel Web Marketing Web site:

- [Using external authentication using LDAP \(Lightweight Directory Access Protocol\)](#)

LDAP is an Internet protocol that email programs use to look up contact information from a server.

- Creating database users for LDAP to use in database access
- Defining visibility for views and products
- Assigning a proxy employee
- Creating users through registration or user administration
- Associating users with accounts
- Allowing various levels of access such as Anonymous, Implicit login, and Explicit login
- Customizing access to home and login pages. For more information, see information about the New User link in ["Using the Web Marketing Offers Page" on page 180](#).
- Using Web Single Sign-on (SSO) functionality
- Allowing another system to log in
- Adding fields to registration forms

For more information on controlling user access, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

## Setting Up Default Responsibilities and Users for Web Marketing

Responsibilities control which views the users can see. The views to which a user has access determines the links and page tabs that the user sees. For example, if a user has a responsibility that does not permit access to the Credit Cards view, no Credit Cards link appears in the My Settings view. If no views within a business object are visible, the page tab that maps to that business object will not be visible.

The responsibilities predefined for Siebel Web Marketing include:

- **Web Anonymous User.** Grants view visibility to anonymous users such as anonymous visitors, email prospects, and email contacts. For more information about these user types, see ["About Web Marketing Web Site Visitors" on page 173](#). This responsibility allows the user to access views that do not have the Requires\_Explicit\_Login flags set to TRUE in Siebel Tools. For more information, see *Using Siebel Tools*.
- **Web Registered User.** The end user of the application in a business-to-consumer model such as a logged-in contact. For more information about these user types, see ["About Web Marketing Web Site Visitors" on page 173](#). This user has registered and is recognized by the Siebel application either through their login, or because the user enters the site by clicking an embedded link in an email offer.
- **Web Corporate User.** The end user of the application in a business-to-business model. A Web corporate user is associated with an account and must be authorized by the Web Delegated Customer Administrator to access the site. A Siebel administrator can add new Web corporate users.

For more information about setting up and managing responsibilities, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

## Setting Up a Default Campaign and Default Offer

Assigning a default campaign and offer is part of the Web Marketing setup process. An offer associated with the default campaign can be designated as the default offer.

You specify the default campaign and default offer in the Application Administration screen in the System Preferences view. To assign a default campaign, complete the Default Campaign Source Code field. To assign the default offer, complete the Default Offer Code field.

The default campaign and default offer determine which offers are presented to the customer during that customer's Web Marketing session. These offers appear in addition to any targeted offers such as an embedded link in an email offer.

For more information about default offers and default campaigns, see the Featured Offers topic in ["Using the Web Marketing Offers Page."](#)

## Using Siebel Personalization with Web Marketing

Siebel Personalization allows you to deliver personalized content and offers to a customer profile, needs, interests, and history. Personalized content includes greeting users by name, presenting them with content targeted to their needs and interests, and showing them recommended products and offers based on their needs and history.

Using Siebel Personalization, you can define rules to show and hide content dynamically during a user's experience with Siebel Web Marketing. Personalization deployment rules can depend on data such as user's profile information, date ranges, company information, products and services that user has already purchased or reviewed, and specific session information.

The home page in Siebel Web Marketing includes the salutation applet in the upper left corner. It typically includes a personal greeting, but it can be configured to deliver targeted content such as product promotions, announcements, birthday greetings, and offer updates. The home page also contains a list of recommended products and featured offers, both of which can be personalized based on user-specific information. Conditional expressions can be used to hide applets under certain conditions.

You manage personalization in the Personalization Administration screen in your Siebel Application. For information about administering personalization, see *Siebel Personalization Administration Guide*.

## Customizing the Web Marketing User Interface

The Siebel product provides a set of Web templates and cascading style sheets (CSS) to create the look and feel of a Siebel application. Customers can create their own look and feel by modifying corporate logos, colors, and fonts in the style sheets and Web templates. When you modify these elements, make sure you save a backup copy in case you want to restore the original files.

**NOTE:** These elements are not automatically upgraded during the upgrade process.

The Siebel Web architecture uses the Siebel Web Engine (SWE) to dynamically generate HTML pages. The SWE uses configuration information in the Siebel Repository (SRF) and HTML layout information in the Siebel Web Template (SWT) to merge data with the template when creating the HTML page.

To customize the Web Marketing User Interface, perform the following tasks:

- [Using Web Templates on page 178](#)
- [Implementing Web Marketing Without Frames on page 178](#)
- [Full-Text Search on page 179](#)
- [Response Management on page 179](#)

### Using Web Templates

A Web template defines the layout and formatting elements of the user interface (UI), such as views, applets, and controls. These UI elements are associated with the templates by using Siebel Tools. The associated information is stored in the SRF file. For example, you may have a View object with three applets. You associate a View Template with the view, and map each applet to a placeholder in that template. The advantage of this approach is that the UI objects in the repository are not hard-coded in individual templates. As a result, a number of View objects can share the same template if they share the same layout. The same process and design applies to applet objects.

The three primary templates types are Container, View and Applet. The final HTML pages created by the SWE places the applet in the view and the view in the container. Siebel eBusiness Applications provide numerous applet and view templates with the product. They can be viewed in Tools, but are edited in an external editor. For information about the physical user interface layer, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

The following is a list of some modifications that you might want to perform to change the look and feel of your Web site:

- Modifying views and applets
- Modifying Web Templates
- Changing colors
- Modifying behavior caused by clicking a button
- Adding or removing applets
- Changing controls
- Making fields in a form appear

For more information about customizing the user interface, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

### Implementing Web Marketing Without Frames

Customer and partner applications use HTML frames for compatibility when running in browser-based applications. HTML frames allow portions of the browser window to scroll independently of the rest of the window. For example, you can place the navigation elements in one frame and content in another frame. You can scroll the content while the navigation elements remain in a fixed location.

Customer and partner applications can be implemented without using frames. Before choosing this method, consider the following limitation. In an unframed application, all UI elements exist in the same window. Therefore, the contents list may scroll off the page as a user scrolls down. For example, if the user scrolls down to review content, the navigation elements might not be visible.

## Full-Text Search

Siebel Search for Customers is a subset of the Siebel Search product. It allows users to scan database tables and documents for pertinent information. Siebel Search is included with every license of a Siebel application. For information about Siebel Search and Siebel Search for Customers, see *Siebel Search Administration Guide*.

## Response Management

Siebel Web Marketing allows marketers to capture a series of responses during a customer interaction. Siebel Web Marketing supports automatic capture of the following responses:

- **Clicked on Web Offer.** Captured when the recipient clicks the embedded link for a Web offer in an email offer.
- **Clicked on Product URL.** Captured when the recipient clicks the embedded link for the product in an email or Web offer.
- **Clicked on Web Survey.** Captured when the recipient clicks the embedded link for the Web survey in an email or Web offer.
- **Completed Web Survey.** Captured when the recipient clicks Finish on the Web survey view. The survey answers are captured if the Save Answer field is checked for the question on the SmartScript Administration views. For more information, see *Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide*.
- **Downloaded Info/File.** Captured when the recipient clicks the embedded link for the document that is downloaded in a Web offer.
- **Requested Unsubscribe.** Captured when the recipient submits a subscription preference updates after clicking the embedded link in the email offer. In addition to the response, the contact profile is automatically updated.
- **Requested call back.** Captured when the recipient submits a request after clicking the embedded link in an email or Web offer.
- **Requested more info.** Captured when the recipient submits a request after clicking the embedded link in an email or Web offer.
- **Submitted Source Code.** Captured when a contact or prospect types a source code and offer code in the Do you have Another Offer form in the Offers page.

Additional responses and Siebel events can be captured through configuration. For more information, see the event tracking topics in *Using Siebel Tools*.

## About the Siebel Web Marketing Web Site

The Siebel Web Marketing Web site consists of the Offers page, the Information page, and their related views. Using the navigation bar, you can manage your personal profile by changing preferences in the My Settings view.

Web visitors access the My Settings view by clicking the My Account link in the navigation bar of any Web Marketing page. The My Settings view has the following links that allow users and visitors to manage their personal profiles.

- **Address Book.** A list of available addresses for the visitor. Visitors can add, delete, and modify their address, and the changes automatically update their information in the Siebel database.
- **Credit Cards.** A list of available credit cards for the visitor. This view is not required if you do not implement the Siebel eSales module or if you do not want to use credit card management.
- **Subscription Preferences.** A series of channel-specific and general communication preferences for each visitor. This view could be modified through Siebel Tools to include additional subscription preferences, for example by product or area of interest. These preferences could then be used to drive marketing activities for that visitor. This view appears when a user clicks on the Request Unsubscribe embedded URL in an email and a response is automatically created when the visitor clicks Submit. The individual's preferences are also updated automatically in the Siebel database.
- **User Profile.** A series of user profile fields, which the user can modify. Once again, this view can be extended to display additional profile information.

**NOTE:** Notification Preferences, Lister Payment and Shipping Terms, and Auction Privilege are not used at this time.

## Using the Web Marketing Offers Page

The default home page for Web Marketing is the Offers page. The center applet of this view contains the specific Web offer intended for each Web site visitor. The Offers page provides links to other views, including additional offers, product information, Web surveys, and account and contact profile information.

The Offers page has the following configurable applets:

- **Salutation.** The salutation text that appears depends on the personalization rules that are applied for the user that accesses the page. After logging in, registered email recipients or Web users see a greeting customized with their names. An anonymous Web visitor's greeting says "Welcome!" You can change the salutation greeting text in the Personalization Administration views.

**NOTE:** When Web Marketing is deployed as part of the eCustomer application (a bundle of eSales, eService and Web Marketing), the user can see the Offers page (Web Marketing home page) and the eCustomer home page. Because the eCustomer home page has a salutation greeting, the salutation greeting is suppressed in the Offers page (Web Marketing home page).

- **The New User Link.** You can set up the New User link that appears in the User Login applet to allow a Web site visitor to create a user ID and password for limited access to your Web Marketing Web site. When a visitor clicks New User on the Web Marketing home page, the registration views appear, allowing a visitor to complete a profile. The process is managed by a workflow business process that you can modify in Siebel Business Process Designer. For more information, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** If a prospect registers, the prospect is automatically converted to a contact. After becoming a contact, responses captured for the prospect are not associated with the new contact record. For more information, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

- **Web Offer.** The center applet of the Offers page displays Web offer details. The applet contains the contents of the Web offer presented to the visitor. The Offer that appears is determined in the following ways:
  - The offer details are based on the Web-offer link that the visitor selects in an email.
  - The offer details are based on how Siebel Personalization sort the offers in the Featured Offers applet. Details for the top offer in the Featured Offers applet are automatically presented in the center applet.

**NOTE:** The Featured Offers area will be empty if no featured offers exist.

- **Recommended Products.** This applet contains a list of recommended products, customized for each user based on that user's Web profile attributes. This list can be modified using the Personalization Administration views. Unidentified users will see a default listing.
- **Featured Offers.** This applet displays every Web offer for which the contact or prospect is eligible. When a visitor logs onto a Web site and clicks the Send Product Information or Request Call Back link, the response is captured for the default campaign and offer.

Web-offer types include the following:

- Web offers associated with the default campaign. When you specify a default campaign, the offers associated with that campaign appear in the Featured Offers list. The default campaign does not need to be loaded with campaign contacts and prospects. However, the campaign and associated Web offers must have active dates, and the Inbound Active flag must be checked.
- Web offers associated with other active campaigns. These have been loaded with contacts and prospects. The offers must have active dates and the Inbound Active flag must be checked. Only those contacts and prospects targeted will see these Web offers in the Featured Offers applet.

For more information about setting the default campaign or default offer, see ["Setting Up a Default Campaign and Default Offer"](#) on page 177.

- **Information.** This applet contains hyperlinks to the following applets in the Information page:
  - Downloads
  - Send Product Information
  - Request a Call

For more information about these applets, see ["Using the Web Marketing Information Page"](#) on page 183.

- **Do you have another offer?** After the user types the offer code and source code in these required fields and then clicks Submit, that Web offer appears and a response is automatically created.

## Using Web Marketing Views and Additional Unstructured Content

For information about Web Marketing views and content that the visitor might use, see the following topics:

- [Using the Web Marketing Product Detail View on page 182](#)
- [Using the Web Marketing Web Survey View on page 182](#)
- [Adding Unstructured Content on page 182](#)

### Using the Web Marketing Product Detail View

When a visitor responds to an offer (email or Web) by clicking an embedded product URL, a page with product details appears for that offer. This view displays details and incentive pricing for the selected offer. The price list associated with the offer determines the price shown in this view. The person who created the offer is responsible for associating the products and the correct price list with the offer. This combination determines the products that can be embedded in the offers and the price that appears. For more information about price list administration, see *Pricing Administration Guide*.

Additionally, this view contains the Related Items applet, showing products that might be of interest to the Web visitor. Items in the Related Items list are based on previous purchases or literature requests.

In addition to viewing details, the Web visitor using Siebel eCustomer may purchase the product from this view by clicking Add Item. After adding the product, the selected item appears in the Last Item Added applet.

**NOTE:** Checkout functionality exists only if the customer has purchased Siebel eCustomer. If you are not using eCustomer, the Add Item button is unavailable.

### Using the Web Marketing Web Survey View

When the Web site visitor clicks an embedded URL for a Web survey in an email or Web offer, a survey wizard appears that navigates the user through a series of questions about the product. Survey results can be automatically stored and then analyzed and used for future marketing activities. Web surveys are administered using Siebel SmartScripts. For more information, see *Siebel SmartScript Administration Guide*.

### Adding Unstructured Content

Siebel Web Marketing has the ability to display general external and unstructured content in the Web Marketing site using the Microsite Management module. For more information, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

## Using the Web Marketing Information Page

The Information page allows Web site visitors to download product information and request more information. The visitor can reach this page clicking the Information page tab. The Information page contains the following applets:

- **Downloads.** Clicking a hyperlink opens the literature using the default viewer for that type of literature. The visitor can sort this list or search for any specific literature item by name, description, type, or date.
- **Request More Information.** Allows visitors to request product information (Send Product Information) and request a telephone call (Request a Call) using response forms. For more information about this applet, see the following topics:
  - [Using the Web Marketing Send Product Information View on page 183](#)
  - [Using the Web Marketing Request a Call View on page 183](#)

### Using the Web Marketing Send Product Information View

The Send Product Information view displays a form that Web site visitors can complete to request that product information be sent to them.

This view can be accessed from the Offers and Information pages or as an embedded URL link in an email offer or a Web offer. The Available Products area lists products for which additional information is available. This is determined by Catalog visibility. For additional information, see *Product Administration Guide*.

When the Send Product Information or Request Call Back views are accessed using an offer's embedded URL, the list of products is restricted to the products associated with the offer. The user can browse the list, selecting products of interest, and then move the items to the Selected Products list by clicking Add.

A visitor can request information about the one or more items in the Selected Products list by selecting the check boxes. To clear an item from the list, choose a Selected Product item, and then click Remove. After the Web site visitor chooses the products for which he or she wants more information, the visitor clicks Continue to move to the delivery form. In the delivery form, the Web site visitor can choose direct mail, email, fax, or phone as the delivery method, and then fill in the necessary information for the delivery method. When the visitor clicks Submit, the Confirmation view appears listing the products for which the visitor requested information and the delivery information. This information is stored as a response of the type Requested More Info.

### Using the Web Marketing Request a Call View

The Request a Call view allows the Web site visitor to request a callback about one or more products. This view can be accessed from the Offers or Information pages or as an embedded URL in an email offer or a Web offer. When accessed from an email or Web offer, the products available are limited to those products associated with the offer. When accessed from the Offers or Information pages, the products are limited by Catalog visibility.

Requests for a telephone call are initiated in the same way as requests for product information, using Available and Selected product lists. After the visitor chooses the products that he or she wants to discuss in a callback, the visitor clicks Continue to move to the Request Call form. There the visitor provides a phone number, the time of day to call, and adds comments. When the visitor clicks Submit, a Confirmation appears containing a list of products for which the visitor requested a callback and a list of call preferences. This information is stored as a response of the type Requested Call Back.

# A

## Assigning Character Sets for the Email Marketing Server

If you want to change the character set used for outbound emails, then you need to add a parameter to the Email Marketing Server profile that will be used for the outbound email campaign. The parameter you need to add or change is Character Set and the value will be one of the values from the right column of [Table 29](#).

To assign the character set for the Email Marketing Server configuration, use the following guidelines:

- Navigate to the Administration - Marketing screen > Servers view.
- Query for records of type Email Marketing Server.
- Select an email server and add a new parameter type with the name Character Set.
- Set the parameter value to the value of the character set to which you want to send the email offer.

**NOTE:** You need to upload a document that is saved on your disc as UTF-8, but which can be represented in this configured character set.

When the Communications Server processes an email request for a campaign, it identifies the character set and locale of the first offer, changes to that offer's character set and locale, and processes that offer and all associated offers using that character set and locale.

[Table 29](#) identifies the name of the character set used in an email campaign. For more information, see ["Applying Globalization Rules to Offers"](#) on page 54.

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
CP10004	Arabic	Macintosh Arabic	Microsoft & IBM	CP10004
CP1256	Arabic		Microsoft & IBM	CP1256
CP20420	Arabic	(With full-width Latin and punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20420
CP28596	Arabic	Arabic Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28596
CP720	Arabic	Transparent ASMO	Microsoft & IBM	CP720
CP864	Arabic		Microsoft & IBM	CP864
ISO 8859-6	Arabic	ISOLatinArabic	International or National Standard	Arabic
CP708	Arabic	ASMO708	Microsoft & IBM	CP708

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
CP1257	Baltic		Microsoft & IBM	CP1257
CP28594	Baltic	Baltic Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28594
CP775	Baltic		Microsoft & IBM	CP775
ISO 8859-4	Baltic	Latin4	International or National Standard	Latin4, ISO-8859-4
ISO 8859-13	Baltic	Latin7	International or National Standard	Latin7, ISO-8859-13
ISO 8859-14	Celtic	Latin8	International or National Standard	ISO-8859-14
CCSID 935	Chinese, Simplified		IBM	CCSID-935, CCSID935
EUC-CN	Chinese, Simplified	GB2312, EUC-SC	UNIX	GB2312
GB2312	Chinese, Simplified	EUC-CN, EUC-SC	International or National Standard	GB2312
HZ-GB-2312	Chinese, Simplified	HZ-GB-2312	International or National Standard	HZ, HZ-GB-2312
CP936	Chinese, Simplified	GBK	Microsoft & IBM	CP936, GBK
MacChinese Simplified	Chinese, Simplified		Macintosh	MacChinese Simplified
CCSID 937	Chinese, Traditional		IBM	CCSID-937, CCSID937
CNS-11643-1986	Chinese, Traditional	EUC-TW	International or National Standard	CNS-11643-1986
CNS-11643-1992	Chinese, Traditional	EUC-TW	International or National Standard	CNS-11643, CNS-11643-1992
EUC-TW	Chinese, Traditional	CNS-11643-1986, CNS-11643-1992	UNIX	CNS-11643, CNS-11643-1992
GB12345	Chinese, Traditional		International or National Standard	GB12345
Big5	Chinese, Traditional		International or National Standard	Big5
CP10002	Chinese, Traditional	Macintosh Traditional Chinese	Microsoft & IBM	CP10002

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

<b>Encoding</b>	<b>Character Set Name</b>	<b>Also Known As</b>	<b>Vendor/Standard Body</b>	<b>Character Set Value (Unicode)</b>
CP950	Chinese, Traditional		Microsoft & IBM	CP950
MacChineseTraditional	Chinese, Traditional		Macintosh	MacChineseTraditional
MacCroatian	Croatian		Macintosh	MacCroatian
CP10007	Cyrillic	Macintosh Cyrillic	Microsoft & IBM	CP10007
CP1251	Cyrillic	MS Windows Cyrillic (Slavic)	Microsoft & IBM	CP1251
CP20866	Cyrillic	Cyrillic Alphabet, KOI8-R	Microsoft & IBM	CP20866
CP20880	Cyrillic	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20880
CP21025	Cyrillic	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP21025
CP21866	Cyrillic	Ukranian KOI8-RU	Microsoft & IBM	CP21866
CP28595	Cyrillic	Cyrillic Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28595
CP855	Cyrillic	IBM Cyrillic	Microsoft & IBM	CP855
CP866	Cyrillic	MS DOS Russian	Microsoft & IBM	CP866
ISO 8859-5	Cyrillic	ISOLatinCyrillic	International or National Standard	ISOLatinCyrillic
MacCyrillic	Cyrillic		Macintosh	MacCyrillic
MacDevanagari	Devanagari		Macintosh	MacDevanagari
CP10006	Greek	Macintosh Greek 1	Microsoft & IBM	CP10006
CP1253	Greek		Microsoft & IBM	CP1253
CP20423	Greek	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20423
CP28597	Greek	Greek Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28597
CP737	Greek		Microsoft & IBM	CP737
CP869	Greek	IBM Modern Greek	Microsoft & IBM	CP869
ISO 8859-7	Greek	ISOLatinGreek	International or National Standard	Greek
MacGreek	Greek		Macintosh	MacGreek

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
MacGujarati	Gujarati		Macintosh	MacGujarati
CP10010	Gurmukhi	Macintosh Gurmukhi	Microsoft & IBM	CP10010
MacGurmukhi	Gurmukhi		Macintosh	MacGurmukhi
CP10005	Hebrew	Macintosh Hebrew	Microsoft & IBM	CP10005
CP1255	Hebrew		Microsoft & IBM	CP1255
CP28598	Hebrew	Hebrew Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28598
CP38598	Hebrew	ASCII + Hebrew and private use characters	Microsoft & IBM	CP38598
CP862	Hebrew		Microsoft & IBM	CP862
ISO 8859-8	Hebrew	ISOLatinHebrew	International or National Standard	Hebrew
CP10079	Icelandic	Macintosh Icelandic	Microsoft & IBM	CP10079
CP861	Icelandic	MS DOS Icelandic	Microsoft & IBM	CP861
MacIcelandic	Icelandic		Macintosh	MacIcelandic
CCSID 1027	Japanese	EBCDIK	Microsoft & IBM	CCSID-1027, CCSID1027
CCSID 290	Japanese	EBCDIK	Microsoft & IBM	CCSID-290, CCSID290
CCSID 930	Japanese		IBM	CCSID-930, CCSID930
CCSID 939	Japanese		IBM	CCSID-939, CCSID939
CCSID 942	Japanese		Microsoft & IBM	CCSID-942, CCSID942
CP10001	Japanese	Macintosh Japanese	Microsoft & IBM	CP10001
CP20290	Japanese	(full/half width Latin & halfwidth katakana)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20290
CP21027	Japanese	(halfwidth Latin, halfwidth katakana&private use)	Microsoft & IBM	CP21027
EUC-JP	Japanese		UNIX	EUC-JP, EUC-J

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
ISO-2022-JP	Japanese		International or National Standard	ISO-2022-JP
JIS_X_0201	Japanese	HalfWidthKatakana	International or National Standard	JIS_X_0201
JIS_X_0208	Japanese		International or National Standard	JIS_X_0208
MacJapanese	Japanese		Macintosh	MacJapanese
Shift-JISMS	Japanese	MS_Kanji, CP932	Microsoft & IBM	Shift-JIS, SJIS
Shift-JIS78	Japanese	Shift-JIS without MS/IBM extensions	UNIX/Macintosh	Shift-JIS78, SJIS78
CP10003	Korean	Macintosh Korean	Microsoft & IBM	CP10003
CP1361	Korean	Korean Johab (based on KSC 5861-1992)	Microsoft & IBM	CP1361
CP949	Korean		Microsoft & IBM	CP949
EUC-KR	Korean	KS_C_5861-1992	UNIX	EUC-KR, EUC-K
ISO-2022-KR	Korean	KS_C_5601-1987	International or National Standard	ISO-2022-KR
Johab	Korean		International or National Standard	Johab
KS_C_5601-1987	Korean	ISO-2022-KR	International or National Standard	ISO-2022-KR
KS_C_5861-1992	Korean	EUC-KR	International or National Standard	KS_C_5861-1992
MacKorean	Korean		Macintosh	MacKorean
CP10000	Latin	Macintosh Roman	Microsoft & IBM	CP10000
CP10029	Latin	Macintosh Latin2	Microsoft & IBM	CP10029
CP10082	Latin	(with mathematical symbols)	Microsoft & IBM	CP10082
CCSID 1047	Latin	EBCDIC (for IBM Open Systems platform)	Microsoft & IBM	CCSID1047
CP20261	Latin	(with private use characters)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20261
CP20269	Latin		Microsoft & IBM	CP20269

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
CP20273	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20273
CP20277	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20277
CP20278	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20278
CP20280	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20280
CP20284	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20284
CP20285	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20285
CP20297	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20297
CP20833	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20833
CP20871	Latin	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20871
CP28591	Latin	ASCII + Latin accented vowels	Microsoft & IBM	CP28591
CP28593	Latin	Latin 3 Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28593
CP850	Latin	MS DOS Multilingual, MS-DOS Latin1	Microsoft & IBM	CP850
CP870	Latin	(with fullwidth punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP870
ISO 8859-1	Latin	Latin1	International or National Standard	Latin1, ISO-8859-1
ISO 8859-15	Latin	Latin1 + Euro symbol & accented characters	International or National Standard	ISO-8859-15
ISO 8859-2	Latin	Latin2	International or National Standard	Latin2, ISO-8859-2
MacRoman	Latin		Macintosh	MacRoman
NextStep	Latin		Apple/Next	NextStep

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
Adobe-Standard-Encoding	Latin	(used in PS printers)	Other Corporate	Adobe-Standard-Encoding
CP863	Latin, Canadian French	MS DOS Canadian French	Microsoft & IBM	CP863
CP28592	Latin, Central European	Central European Alphabet (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28592
MacCentralEuropean	Latin, Central European		Macintosh	MacCentralEuropean
CP1250	Latin, Eastern Europe		Microsoft & IBM	CP1250
CP20905	Latin, Esperanto	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20905
CP860	Latin, Portuguese	MS DOS Portuguese	Microsoft & IBM	CP860
ISO 8859-3	Latin, Southeast European	Latin3	International or National Standard	Latin3, ISO-8859-3
ASCII	Latin, US English	US-ASCII, CP367	International or National Standard	ASCII
CP037	Latin, US English	EBCDIC	Microsoft & IBM	CP037
CP1026	Latin, US English	EBCDIC	Microsoft & IBM	CP1026
CP1252	Latin, US English	MS Windows Latin1 (ANSI)	Microsoft & IBM	CP1252
CP20105	Latin, US English	US ASCII	Microsoft & IBM	CP20105
CP437	Latin, US English	MS-DOS Latin US	Microsoft & IBM	CP437
CP500	Latin, US English	EBCDIC	Microsoft & IBM	CP500

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
CP875	Latin, US English	EBCDIC	Microsoft & IBM	CP875
CP10017	Malayalam	Macintosh Malayalam	Microsoft & IBM	CP10017
CP865	Nordic	MS DOS Nordic	Microsoft & IBM	CP865
ISO 8859-10	Nordic	Latin6	International or National Standard	Latin6, ISO-8859-10
MacRomanian	Romanian		Macintosh	MacRomanian
CP852	Slavic	MS DOS Slavic	Microsoft & IBM	CP852
Adobe-Symbol-Encoding	Symbol	(used in PS printers)	Adobe	Adobe-Symbol-Encoding
Adobe-Zapf-Dingbats-Encoding	Symbol	(used in PS printers)	Adobe	Adobe-Zapf-Dingbats-Encoding
CP10008	Symbol	Macintosh RSymbol (Right-left symbol)	Microsoft & IBM	CP10008
MacDingbats	Symbol		Macintosh	MacDingbats
MacSymbol	Symbol		Macintosh	MacSymbol
CP20838	Thai	(with fullwidth Latin & punctuation)	Microsoft & IBM	CP20838
CP874	Thai	IBMThai	Microsoft & IBM	CP874
ISO 8859-11 (draft)	Thai	ISOLatinThai	International or National Standard	Thai
MacThai	Thai		Macintosh	MacThai
CP10081	Turkish	Macintosh Turkish	Microsoft & IBM	CP10081
CP1254	Turkish		Microsoft & IBM	CP1254
CP28599	Turkish	Turkish (ISO)	Microsoft & IBM	CP28599
CP857	Turkish	IBM Turkish	Microsoft & IBM	CP857
ISO 8859-9	Turkish	Latin5	International or National Standard	Latin5, ISO-8859-9
MacTurkish	Turkish		Macintosh	MacTurkish
MacUkrainian	Ukranian		Macintosh	MacUkrainian

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
BMP	Unicode		Unicode	BMP, Unicode20:big-endian
Java	Unicode	Way of representing Unicode characters in ASCII	Sun	Java, Unicode20:BOM: Java, Unicode11:Java, Unicode11:BOM: Java
UCS2	Unicode	ISO-10646-UCS2, UTF16	Unicode	UCS2, Unicode, Unicode20:UCS2
Unicode Big-endian	Unicode		Unicode	big-endian, Unicode20:big-endian, Unicode11:big-endian, Unicode11:BOM: big-endian
Unicode Little-endian	Unicode		Unicode	little-endian, Unicode20:little-endian, Unicode11:little-endian, Unicode11:BOM:l ittle-endian
Unicode11-UCS2	Unicode		Unicode	Unicode11-UCS2, Unicode11:UCS2, Unicode11:BOM: UCS2
Unicode11-UTF7	Unicode		Unicode	Unicode11-UTF7, Unicode11:UTF7, Unicode11:BOM: UTF7
Unicode11-UTF8	Unicode		Unicode	Unicode11-UTF8, Unicode11:UTF8, Unicode11:BOM: UTF8
UTF7	Unicode		Unicode	UTF7, Unicode20:BOM: UTF7

Table 29. Character Set Values Used in Email Campaigns

Encoding	Character Set Name	Also Known As	Vendor/Standard Body	Character Set Value (Unicode)
UTF8	Unicode		Unicode	UTF8, Unicode20:BOM: UTF8
UTF-EBCDIC	Unicode		Unicode	UTF8-EBCDIC, UTF-8-EBCDIC
CP1258	Vietnamese		Microsoft & IBM	CP1258

# Index

## A

### activity plans, creating and using

- about 87
- activity plan and activities, associating to a campaign or program 88
- activity plan template, creating 87
- activity plan template, creating activities for 88
- programs and campaigns, associating activity plans with 88

### activity templates

- activities, creating for 88
- activity plan template, creating 87

### actual expenses and revenue, about and fields 14

### Assignment Manager

- assignment skill rules, about using 111
- campaign contacts, automatically assigning owners to 106
- multiple assignment skills, associating with a campaign 112

### assignment skills, deleting 113

### attachments

- document to marketing plan 16
- documents to programs and campaigns 90
- email offers, adding to 67
- Web offers, adding to 81

### attributes

- See also *individual attribute entries*
- internal list, adding using prospect attributes 163
- list of prospects, about creating using attributes 163
- list of prospects, creating using attributes (procedure) 163

### automatic execution of a stage

- scheduling (procedure) 135

### automatic execution of programs

- about scheduling 135
- marketing campaign workflow process, understanding 137
- schedule, deleting 136
- schedule, editing 136

### automatic response

- See response management, using

### Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 145

## awards

- campaign quota objective, assigning to 109
- new awards, creating 110

## C

### call guides

- call guide, creating 78
- phone offers, creating for 78

### Call Status Analysis chart, viewing 139

### Call Status by Employee chart, viewing 139

### Campaign Achievement chart

- Siebel Campaigns, viewing in 139
- steps before viewing 138

### Campaign Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143

### campaign assignment skills, setting up

- about 111
- assignment skills and all its campaign skill items, deleting 113
- campaign skill items, deleting 113
- multiple assignment skills, associating with a campaign 112
- skill items, associating with a skill 112

### campaign charts

- Call Status Analysis chart, viewing 139
- Call Status by Employee chart, viewing 139
- Campaign Achievement chart, steps before viewing 138
- Campaign Achievements, viewing in Siebel Campaigns 139
- Campaign Trend Analysis chart, viewing 142
- Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign chart, viewing 140
- Lead Quality by Response chart, viewing 140
- Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 141
- Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141
- Order Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141
- Trend Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 142
- types of charts 138

- campaign contacts, automatically assigning owners to** 106
- campaign data**
  - importing 155
  - mapping fields 155
- campaign elements, reviewing** 124
- campaign execution options, setting up**
  - about setting up 100
  - campaign contacts, automatically assigning owners to 106
- Campaign Explorer**
  - campaign elements, reviewing 124
  - folder, adding items to 124
- campaign groups**
  - about 98
  - groups, adding to a campaign 100
- campaign quotas, setting up**
  - about and process 107
  - campaign quota plan, assigning participants 111
  - new awards, creating 110
  - quota objective values, editing 109
  - quota objective, assigning predefined awards to 109
  - quota plan, adding quota objectives to 108
  - quota plan, creating 108
- campaign skills, defined** 111
- campaign teams, working with**
  - about 98
  - groups, adding to a campaign 100
- Campaign Trend Analysis chart, viewing** 142
- campaign, setting up in Siebel Marketing**
  - campaign, associating campaign elements with 95
  - execution options, setting up 101
  - team, assigning to a campaign 99
- campaigns**
  - See also* segment count, allocating to campaigns; waves; multistage recurring campaign
  - about 86
  - campaigns timeline, about 89
  - contacts or prospects, adding to 127
  - documents, attaching to 90
  - list, adding to a campaign 31
  - marketing campaign workflow process, understanding 137
  - new campaign with offer, defining 29
  - note, determining which program is using a campaign 29
  - opportunity, creating for 143
  - planning suggestions 91
  - predefined campaigns with associated offers,
    - adding 29
    - using in Siebel Marketing
      - about 85
- Campaigns Opportunity, using to promote a prospect** 166
- campaigns, launching**
  - See also* automatic execution of programs
  - campaign launch status, monitoring 133
  - email campaign, suspending and relaunching 134
  - manually launching campaigns (procedure) 132
  - manually launching campaigns, requirements 132
  - marketing program, launching 131
- campaigns, setting up**
  - new campaign, creating 92
  - offer, associating with a campaign 96
  - related event, associating with a campaign 96
  - SmartScript, setting up 97
- campaigns, setting up in Siebel Marketing**
  - campaign, associating offers with 96
  - creating (procedure) 92
- charts**
  - Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 145
  - Call Status Analysis chart, viewing 139
  - Call Status by Employee chart, viewing 139
  - Campaign Achievement chart, steps before viewing 138
  - Campaign Achievements, viewing in Siebel Campaigns 139
  - Campaign Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143
  - campaign charts, about 138
  - Campaign Trend Analysis chart, viewing 142
  - Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign chart, viewing 140
  - Lead Quality by Analysis chart, viewing 140
  - Offer Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 144
  - Offer Type Analysis (Response) by Campaign chart, viewing 144
  - Offer Type Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 144
  - Opportunity Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143
  - Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 141

- Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141
- Order Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141
- response charts, about viewing in Siebel Campaigns 142
- response charts, accessing (procedure) 143
- Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 145
- Trend Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 142
- contact information, working with**
  - contacts and prospects, viewing 127
  - imported or internal list, about associating with campaign 125
  - prospects or contacts, adding to a campaign 127
  - prospects or contacts, associating with a campaign 126
- contact lists, viewing from contacts** 169
  - data matching and data cleansing 148
  - definition 147
  - removing from a list 171
- contacts and prospects, about working with** 125
- Contacts List view, using to view contact information** 169
- D**
- D&B lists, about** 125
- D&B, integrating list management with**
  - about 171
  - account data, viewing for D&B prospect 172
  - D&B prospect, promoting 172
- data quality settings, verifying** 149
- deleting**
  - assignment skills 113
- Delivery Profiles**
  - about 75
  - delivery profile, creating 76
  - fax offer, associating with 77
- direct campaigns, targeted at** 85
- direct mail offers, about and Direct Mail Offer view** 78
- distribution list, generating**
  - generating a list 130
  - note, previewing not working 129
  - previewing (procedure) 130
  - previewing, about 129
  - sample list example 130
- Do you have another offer? applet, about** 182
- documents**
  - marketing plan, attaching to 16
  - programs and campaigns, attaching to 90
- Downloads applet, about** 183
- drag-and-drop, about Program Flow Designer** 23
- Dun & Bradstreet**
  - See D&B, integrating list management with
- E**
- email**
  - campaign, testing 116
  - campaigns, stopping, resuming, or restarting 134
  - offers, sending 133
  - Siebel eMail Response, about configuring to capture email responses 117
- email offers**
  - See also Delivery Profiles; offers, creating and using
  - about and Email Offers view 65
  - attachments, adding to email offers 67
  - offer template, associating with 81
  - offer template, associating with an email offer 66
  - outbound email distribution 132
  - outbound email load balancing 132
- employees**
  - Call Status Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 139
  - Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141
  - Trend Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 142
- errors**
  - Internal Communication protocol error message 130
- events**
  - about using with Siebel Marketing 114
  - events timeline, about 89
  - offers, about associating with 72
  - offers, about how links appear in an offer 73
  - offers, associating with (procedure) 73
  - promoting, using campaigns 114
  - promoting, using programs 115
- external lists, about** 125
- external lists, importing and managing**
  - See also internal lists, creating and managing about 147
  - campaign and response data, importing 155

- campaign and response fields, mapping 155
- database columns in the prospect table, mapping list columns to 153
- existing List Import Format, applying to your list 158
- fields, mapping to when importing a lists 157
- import mode, selecting (procedure) 152
- import request, tracking the status of 154
- import status and error messages, understanding 159
- importing an external list, creating a record 150
- importing external lists, format and tasks performed 150
- List Import Format, about editing the settings 158
- List Import Format, about using 157
- List Import mode, selecting 151
- list import request, launching 154
- list records, maintaining attributes for 156
- log file, viewing for an import task 159
- mapping fields when importing, about 157
- server components and tasks, verifying status of 148

## F

### fax offers

- See also* Delivery Profiles
- about and Fax Offer view 74
- offer template, associating with fax offer 75
- sending 133

### Featured Offers applet, about 181

### forecast expenses and revenues, about and field (table) 14

### forecasting for campaigns

- See also* activity plans, creating and using; activities, creating and using; timelines

### frames, implementing Web Marketing without frames 178

### fund request

- marketing plan, associating with 15

## G

### global deployment, Web Marketing Globalization Rules 173

- offers, applying to 54

## H

### HTML

- editor, using to edit the offer template 60
- frames, implementing Web Marketing without frames 178

## I

### import request, tracking the status of imported lists 154

- campaign, about associating with 125

### importing a list

- mapping fields when importing 157

### incoming data, validating the structure of 150

### indirect campaigns, targeted at 85

### Information applet, about 181

### internal lists

- about 125

- campaign, about associating with 125

### internal lists, creating and managing

- See also* external lists, importing and managing; prospects, promoting
- about and list of tasks 159

- contacts or prospects, adding to an internal list 162

- creating internal lists, about 161

- internal list, adding using prospect attributes 163

- internal lists of contacts or prospects, creating 162

- lists of prospects, about creating using attributes 163

- lists of prospects, creating using attributes (procedure) 163

## L

### Lead Quality Analysis by Campaign chart, viewing 140

### Lead Quality by Analysis chart, viewing 140

### List Contacts and Prospects view, using to promote a prospect 166

### List Import Format

- about using 157

- editing the settings, about 158

- existing List Import Format, applying to your list 158

- import status and error messages, understanding 159

### List Import mode, selecting 151

### list import request, launching 154

### list management

- See also* external lists, importing and managing; internal lists, creating and managing

- about 147
- list file name format 168
- tasks, list of 147
- list records**
  - additional attributes, adding to list 156
  - additional attributes, creating 156
  - attributes, maintaining for list records 156
- Lists view. using to view a contact or prospect list** 169
- lists, generating**
  - generating a list 130
  - note, previewing not working 129
  - previewing (previewing) 130
  - previewing, about 129
  - sample list example 130
- lists, viewing and maintaining**
  - about and format 168
  - Contact or Prospects List view, using to view contact or prospect information 169
  - contacts, removing from a list 171
  - deactivating lists 170
  - deleting lists 170
  - Lists view, using to view a contact or prospect list 169
  - prospects, removing from a list 170
- literature**
  - offer, associating with 79
- log file**
  - import task, viewing 159
- M**
- manually launching programs, about** 131
- mapping fields**
  - about 157
  - when importing a list (procedure) 157
- Market Development Funds module (MDF)**
  - fund request, associating with a marketing plan 15
- Market Plan Explorer, using to review marketing plan organization and associated tactics** 19
- Marketing Campaign Launch workflow process, understanding** 137
- marketing planning and budgeting**
  - budgets, developing and assigning for a marketing plan 13
  - goal for marketing plan, creating 11
  - marketing plan organization and associated tactics, reviewing using Plan Explorer 19
  - marketing plan tactics, assigning a budget to 15
  - marketing plan tactics, associating with the marketing plan 13
  - marketing plan, about creating 9
  - marketing plan, associating a fund request with 15
  - marketing plan, attaching a document to 16
  - marketing plan, creating (procedure) 9
- marketing program**
  - See also automatic execution of programs
  - campaign launch status, monitoring 133
  - email campaign, suspending and relaunching 134
  - launching 131
  - manually launching campaigns (procedure) 132
  - manually launching campaigns, requirements 132
- marketing program, designing**
  - multistage programs, about and types of programs 24
- marketing programs, designing**
  - See also Program Flow view
  - creating 25
  - marketing program tasks, list of 23
  - multistage programs, about launching 25
  - programs, about 23
  - programs, creating (procedure) 26
- media offers, about and Media Offers view** 79
- multilingual deployment, Web Marketing** 173
- multistage programs**
  - about and types of programs 24
  - launching, about 25
- O**
- Offer Analysis (Response) chart, viewing** 144
- offer templates, creating and editing**
  - See also offers, creating and using
  - about and offer types associated with 55
  - creating an offer template 56
  - email offer, associating with 66, 81
  - hyperlinks (HREF). using in a template 57
  - offer template associated with an offer, editing in the default HTML editor 60
  - offer template associated with an offer, editing in the Offers screen 59
  - offer template associated with an offer, using the Siebel HTML editor 60
  - Offer Templates list, adding a template

- to 57
- Personalization Categories, about using template not associated with an offer, editing 58
- Offer Type Analysis (Response) by Campaign chart, viewing 144**
- Offer Type Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 144**
- offers**
  - campaign, associating with 96
  - offer code lookups, performing 119
- Offers page, using and configurable applets 180**
- offers, creating and using**
  - See *also* Delivery Profiles; email offers; offer templates, creating and editing
  - Delivery Profiles, about 75
  - Delivery Profiles, associating with a fax offer 77
  - Delivery Profiles, creating a delivery profile 76
  - direct mail offers, about and Direct Mail Offer view 78
  - fax offers, about and Fax Offer view 74
  - fax offers, associating an offer template with 75
  - Globalization Rules, applying to offers 54
  - literature, associating with an offer 79
  - media offers, about and Media Offers view 79
  - offer template, associating with an email offer 81
  - offer, creating 52
  - offers, about 51
  - offers, modifying 54
  - phone offers, working with 77
  - product, associating with an offer 55
  - Web offers, about and Web offers view 80
  - Web offers, adding attachments to 81
  - Web offers, Web surveys, events, and URLs.
    - about associating with offers 72
  - Web offers, Web surveys, events, and URLs.
    - about how links appear in an offer 73
  - Web offers, Web surveys, events, and URLs.
    - about Web Survey view 72
  - Web offers, Web surveys, events, and URLs.
    - associating with offers (procedure) 73
- opportunities**
  - campaign, creating for 143
- Opportunity Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143**
- Opportunity Revenue Analysis by Employee chart, viewing 141**
- Opportunity Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141**
- Order Revenue Analysis chart, viewing 141**
- overwrite existing record mode**
  - about 152
- P**
- Personalization Categories drop-down list, about and using 62**
- Personalization, using with Web Marketing 177**
- phone offers, working with**
  - about phone orders 77
  - call guides, about and creating 78
  - call guides, creating a call guide 78
- Pick Campaign dialog box, using to define new campaign with offer 29**
- Plan Explorer, using to review marketing plan organization and associated tactics 19**
- Preview List, about preview not working 129**
- Product Detail view, about using 182**
- products, associating with offers 55**
- program and campaign organizational tools**
  - about 86
- program execution schedule**
  - deleting 136
  - editing 136
- Program Execution workflow, about using to launch multistage programs 25**
- program flow**
  - campaigns 27
  - events 27
  - lists 27
  - segment 27
  - stage 27
- Program Flow Designer, about 23**
- Program Flow view**
  - See *also* marketing programs, designing about using 27
  - campaign, adding list to 31
  - new campaign with offer, defining 29
  - predefined campaigns with associated offers, adding 29
  - segments, adding to a program stage 29
  - stage, adding to the program 27
- programs**
  - See *also* automatic execution of programs
  - campaign launch status, monitoring 133
  - documents, attaching to 90

- email campaigns, suspending and relaunching 134
  - manually launching campaigns (procedure) 132
  - manually launching campaigns, requirements for 132
  - marketing programs, launching 131
  - programs timeline, about 89
  - promotion map**
    - about modifying and prospect information (table) 167
    - map entries, modifying 168
  - prospect lists**
    - deleting prospects from list 170
    - Lists view, viewing from 169
  - Prospect records, about updating using Update Existing Duplicates Mode** 152
  - prospects**
    - campaign, adding to 127
    - campaign, associating with 126
    - data matching and data cleansing 148
    - definition 147
    - list, removing from 170
    - viewing in Siebel Marketing 127
  - Prospects List view, using to view prospect information** 169
  - Prospects More Info view, using to promote a prospect** 166
  - prospects, promoting**
    - Campaigns Opportunity, using to promote a prospect 166
    - List Contacts and Prospects view, using to promote a prospect 166
    - promotion map, modifying, about and prospect information (table) 167
    - prospect, promoting to a contact, about and application checks 165
    - prospect's response to an opportunity, about promoting 167
    - Prospects More Info view, using to promote a prospect 166
    - prospects, defined 164
- Q**
- quotas**
    - See campaign quotas, setting up
- R**
- Recommended Products applet, about reject import record mode, about related events** 181
    - campaign, associating with 96
  - Request a Call view, about using and accessing** 183
  - Request More Information applet, about** 183
  - requested and assigned budget, about resolve incoming duplicates mode, about** 14
  - response charts**
    - accessing (procedure) 143
    - Average Opportunity Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 145
    - Campaign Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143
    - Offer Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 144
    - Offer Type Analysis (Response) by Campaign chart, viewing 144
    - Offer Type Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 144
    - Opportunity Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 143
    - Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing 145
    - Siebel Campaigns, about viewing in 142
  - response data**
    - importing, about and List Import view described 155
    - response fields for mapping import data 155
  - Response Details form, fields (table)** 121
  - response forms**
    - about 67
    - definition 67
    - relationship to response types 67
  - response management, using**
    - about 116
    - attachments, adding 120
    - automatic response, about creating from opportunities and orders 123
    - offer code lookups, performing 119
    - opportunities, adding 120
    - orders, adding 119
    - products, adding 119
    - Response Details form, fields (table) 121
    - response information, adding 117
    - response, promoting to an opportunity 123
    - source code lookups, performing 118
  - response types**
    - definition 67
  - responses**
    - adding attachments to 120
    - adding opportunities to 120
    - adding orders to 119

adding products to 119  
**responses management, about** 179  
**responsibilities, setting up for Web Marketing** 176  
**Revenue Analysis (Response) chart, viewing** 145

## S

**Salutation applet, about** 180  
**Schedule Calendar view**  
 See automatic execution of programs  
**Send Product Information view, about using and accessing** 183  
**server components and tasks, verifying status of**  
 about and list of components 148  
 data quality settings, verifying 149  
 incoming data, validating the structure of 150  
**set distribution periods**  
 See waves  
**charts** 142  
**Siebel Campaigns**  
 Campaign Achievements, viewing 139  
**Siebel Dun & Bradstreet**  
 account data, viewing for a D&B prospect 172  
 D&B prospect, promoting 172  
 list management, about integrating with 171  
**Siebel eMail Response, about configuring to capture email responses** 117  
**Siebel HTML Editor to edit the offer template** 60  
**Siebel Personalization, using with Web Marketing** 177  
**Siebel Web Engine, about** 175  
**skills**  
 skill items defined 111  
 skill items, associating with a skill 112  
**SmartScript, setting up** 97  
**source code lookups, performing** 118  
**status bars, understanding timelines** 90  
**subwaves, determining the number created** 131

## T

**teams**  
 campaign, assigning to 99  
 organizations inheritance, turning off 25  
**telemarketing offers, about defining templates** 77  
 See *individual template entries*, and offer

templates, creating and editing  
**response management, using**  
 See *individual campaign items*  
**testing campaigns and offers**  
 See *individual campaign items*  
 about 115  
 business scenario 115  
 email and fax offers, sending 133  
 email campaign, testing 116  
**The New User Link applet, about** 181  
**timelines**  
 See *also* forecasting for campaigns  
 about 89  
 color-code status bars, understanding 90  
 types of 89  
**tools**  
 See program and campaign organizational tools  
**Trend Analysis by Employee chart, viewing** 142

## U

**URLs**  
 offers, about how links appear in an offer 73  
 offers, associating with 72  
 offers, associating with (procedure) 73  
**user interface, customizing**  
 about 177  
 full-text search, about 179  
 response management, about 179  
 Web Marketing without frames, implementing 178  
 Web templates, using 178

## W

**Wave Batch Size parameter**  
 subwaves, determining the number created 131  
**waves**  
 about using 30  
 multiple waves, setting up 30  
**Web Anonymous User responsibility, about** 176  
**Web Corporate User responsibility, about** 176  
**Web Marketing, setting up and using**  
 about 173  
 home page, accessing by visitors 173  
 Information page, about and applets 183  
 installing, applications to install before Web Marketing 175  
 Offers pages, using and configurable

- applets 180
  - Product Detail view, about using 182
  - Request a Call view, about using and accessing 183
  - responsibilities and users, setting up default 176
  - Send Product Information view, about using and accessing 183
  - Siebel Personalization, using with Web Marketing 177
  - unstructured content, additional 182
  - user access, tasks to control user access 175
  - user interface, customizing 177
  - Web site visitor, about 173
  - Web site, about 180
  - Web Survey view, about using 182
- Web Offer applet, about** 181
- Web offers**
  - about and Web Offers view 80
  - attachments, adding to 81
  - offers, about associating with 72
  - offers, about associating with (procedures) 73
  - offers, about how links appear in an offer 73
- Web Offers Downloads, using to add attachments to Web offers** 81
- Web Registered User responsibility, about** 176
- Web site**
  - user access, tasks to control user access 175
  - visitor, about 173
  - Web Marketing home page, accessing by visitors 173
  - Web Marketing Web site, about 180
- Web Survey view**
  - Web Marketing Offers page, about using 182
- Web surveys**
  - offers, about associating with 72
  - offers, about links appear in an offer 73
  - offers, associating with (procedure) 73
  - Web survey link, about clicking on 72
- Web templates, using to customize the user interface** 178

